新东方
XDF.CN

精雕细琢
1000题
强化训练通语法

Intensive Training in English Grammar

高考

英语语法
强化训练1000题

新东方考试研究中心 编著

10个单元专项训练，15套强化集训
1000道题快速提升高考英语语法

浙江教育出版社

版权信息

书名：高考英语语法强化训练1000题

作者：新东方考试研究中心

出版社：浙江教育出版社

出版日期：2018-03-01

ISBN：978-7-5536-5936-7

目录
CONTENTS

前言
Part 1 专项训练
Unit 1 冠词、名词、代词和数词
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 2 介词和并列连词
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 3 形容词和副词
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 4 动词的时态和语态
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 5 非谓语动词
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 6 情态动词和虚拟语气
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 7 名词性从句
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 8 状语和状语从句
语法精讲
专项练习
Unit 9 定语和定语从句
语法精讲
专项练习

Unit 10 主谓一致和特殊句式（强调、倒装、省略及其他）
语法精讲
专项练习
Part 2 强化集训
强化集训 1
强化集训 2
强化集训 3
强化集训 4
强化集训 5
强化集训 6
强化集训 7
强化集训 8
强化集训 9
强化集训 10
强化集训 11
强化集训 12
强化集训 13
强化集训 14
强化集训 15
答案解析
Part 1 专项训练
Unit 1
Unit 2
Unit 3
Unit 4
Unit 5
Unit 6
Unit 7
Unit 8
Unit 9
Unit 10
Part 2 强化集训
强化集训 1
强化集训 2
强化集训 3
强化集训 4
强化集训 5

强化集训 6
强化集训 7
强化集训 8
强化集训 9
强化集训 10
强化集训 11
强化集训 12
强化集训 13
强化集训 14
强化集训 15

前言

英国语言专家迈克尔·斯旺（Michael Swan）说：英语语法就是一系列的规则，说明词可以怎样变化以表示不同的含义，以及如何把词组合成句子。

就我们目前的英语学习环境而言，想要学好英语，必须掌握基本语法知识。英语语法名目繁多，条条框框，非常琐碎，如果仅凭死记硬背，很难从中找到学习的乐趣，因而语法学习就成了许多高中生英语学习的一个薄弱环节。

那么该如何学习英语语法呢？认知学习理论认为：知识习得的关键是理解，而理解的实质是学生弄清新旧知识的关系，形成认知结构。学习英语语法要真正理解，不要死记硬背条条框框。

Practice makes perfect.（熟能生巧），学习语法需要大量的练习，以帮助我们理解和巩固语法规则。语法练习题可以有多种形式，如把原句的关键词挖空（如：时态、语态、非谓语中的动词），然后根据语境来还原填空，用完成句子的形式设计练习汉译英等。无论是做哪种练习题，做完之后都可以及时对照答案和解析，以便发现问题和反思纠错，加强学习效果。

另外，学习语法的最终目的之一是能够在具体的语境或语篇中进行运用。综合运用可以通过以下几种方式来实现：通过语法专项练习进行强化训练；拿一段完整的文章来根据语法项目的相关内容进行语篇挖空，然后还原填空；运用所学的语法知识编一段对话等。

总之，对于语法的学习，应善于在理解的基础上学习、在学习中归纳语法规则、在错误中总结语法规律、在交际中使用语法监控等，这样才能起到促进理解、监控输出的作用，使语言知识与技能融为一体。

众所周知，高三学生面临繁重的备考任务，各科都需要投入时间和精力，因而学习英语语法的时间也极其有限。因此，在短时间之内，有效地归纳梳理和系统学习英语语法规则，并辅以针对性练习，对于理解和记忆语法规则就显得尤为重要。

为帮助高中生以较快的速度理解、记忆并掌握高中阶段的语法基础知识，新东方考试研究中心精心策划编写了本书。

本书具有如下特色：

1. 语法考点归纳梳理，精炼讲解，化繁为简

结合考试大纲和考试说明，全面归纳梳理高中阶段英语语法知识，分门别类，纲举目张，将众多的语法条目归纳为10个单元，以“考点”的形式列出高中生应当掌握的语法项目，重点讲解高考涉及的核心语法，做到有的放矢。法不离句，每个考点所列的例句都经过认真筛选，有利于帮助考生理解，形成语感。

2. 精心设计1000道语法试题，学练结合，相得益彰

根据各语法项目精心设计语法试题，使语法学习和练习有机结合，力求帮助考生通过练习来巩固提高英语语法，让语法知识掌握得更加牢固。同一个语法考点多维度考查，重点突出，方式多样，既有传统的单项选择，也有最新的语法填空，还有单句填空与改错，练习多维度、针对性强。

3. “专项训练”与“强化集训”相结合，双管齐下

全书分为“专项训练”与“强化集训”两大部分，其中，“专项训练”专项讲练结合，“强化集训”注重融会贯通，学以致用。

英语学习无捷径，多看多练是掌握英语的有效途径。本书的编写目的就在于帮助广大高中生归纳和梳理高中英语核心语法知识体系，学练结合，提高语法学习的效率。

最后，祝广大高中生能够攻克英语语法，提升英语成绩，顺利升入理想的大学。

Part 1 专项训练

Unit 1 冠词、名词、代词和数词

语法精讲

一、冠词

冠词用在名词之前，分不定冠词（a/an）和定冠词（the）两类。

考点1 不定冠词

1. 表初次提及，非特指

表示第一次提及某人或某物，非特指，需使用不定冠词。

The Wilsons live in an A-shaped house near the coast. It is a 17th-century cottage.

威尔逊先生一家住在海边一个A 字形的房子里，那是一个17世纪的小屋。

2. 表数量“一个”

不定冠词可以表示数量“一个”，意为one；不定冠词用于人名前，表示不认识此人或与某名人有类似性质的人或事，意为a certain。

—Hello, could I speak to Mr. Smith? 您好，我可以和史密斯先生通话吗？

—Sorry, wrong number. There isn’t a Mr. Smith here.

对不起，您打错电话了。这里没有叫史密斯的人。

3. 用于quite, rather, many, half, what, such之后或so（as, too, how）+形容词之后

不定冠词可用于quite, rather, many, half, what, such之后或者用于so（as, too, how）+形容词之后。

This room is rather a big one. 这个房间确实很大。

She is so lovely a girl that all of us like her very much.

她是如此可爱的一个女孩，我们都非常喜欢她。

4. 用于某些抽象名词之前

不定冠词可用于某些抽象名词之前，表示具体化。

It would be a pity to cut down these trees. 如果把这些树砍掉，那太可惜了。

He is a great success as a scientist. 作为科学家，他是一位了不起的成功人士。

具有类似用法的单词还有pleasure, pride, honor, failure, comfort, promise, danger, reality等。

5. 含有不定冠词的常见固定短语

a bit（of）有一点；相当

a couple of 两个，一对；两三个；几个

a crowd of 一大群；很多

a few 少数；几个

a good few 相当多；不少

a good/great many 很多；极多

a great/good deal [表数量，也可修饰动词或形容词的比较级]很多；大量；……得多

a great/good deal of [后接不可数名词]大量的

a group of 一群；一组

a kind of 一种；有几分；稍稍

a lack of 缺少

a large quantity of 大量
a little 少量；有点
a lot 非常；很；……得多
a lot of 很多；许多
a matter of 关乎……的事情
a number of 若干；许多
a pair of 一双/对；一把/副
a piece of 一张/片/块等；一篇/首/幅等
a place of interest 名胜
a series of 一连串的；一系列的
a variety of 种种；各种各样的
a wide range of 众多的；范围广泛的
all of a sudden 突然
arrive at a conclusion 得出结论
as a consequence 结果；因此
as a consequence of 由于……的缘故
as a matter of fact 事实上；其实
as a result 结果；因此
as a result of 作为……的结果
at a loss 不知所措；亏本地
at a time 一次；同时
bring... to a close 结束
catch a cold 感冒
come to a conclusion 得出结论
come to a stop 停止
draw a conclusion 得出结论
earn/make a living 谋生；度日
for a moment 片刻；一会儿

get into a panic 陷入恐慌
give sb. a lift 让某人搭便车
give/lend（sb.）a hand 帮忙，拉一把
go on a diet 节食
have a quarrel with sb. over/about sth. 因……与某人争吵
have a word with 与……谈一谈
have/take a look（at）看
have/take a seat 坐下
have a population of 拥有……人口
in a... style 以……的方式/风格/式样
in a good/bad mood 心情好/不好
in a minute 马上；立刻
in a sense 从某种意义上说
in a way 有点儿；在某种程度上
just a minute 等一下
make a choice 做选择
make a difference 有影响；有重要作用
make a face 做鬼脸
make a fool of... 愚弄
not a bit 一点儿也不
not a little 相当多（=much）
once in a while 偶尔；间或
pay a visit to 参观；访问；拜访
play a joke on 戏弄；拿……开玩笑
play a role in 在……中起作用
play/act a part（in）（在……中）扮演角色/起作用
quite/not a few 相当多；不少
reach a conclusion 得出结论

run/take a risk 冒险

take a chance 冒险一试；碰运气

take a vacation 休假

teach sb. a lesson 给某人一个教训

turn a deaf ear to 对……置若罔闻

with a smile 微笑着

without a stop 不停地

bring an end to 结束；终止

come to an end 告终；结束；完结

have an argument with sb. 与某人争论/争吵

keep an eye on 注意

make an apology 道歉

make an appointment with sb. 与某人约定

make an effort 努力

put an end to 终止；废除

set an example to sb./set sb. an example 为某人树立榜样

take an interest in 对……感兴趣

6. 不定冠词a/an使用区分

（1）以元音音素开头的单词前面加不定冠词时要用an，如an eraser, an apple。注意：hour, honest, honor等单词虽以辅音字母h开头，但其发音是以元音开头，因此，前面的不定冠词也用an。

If a person is dishonest, no one wants to be his friend. He will soon become an outcast. By contrast, an honest man wins the respect of others. 如果一个人不诚实，没有人愿意和他做朋友。他很快就会成为一个异类。相比之下，一个诚实的人会赢得他人的尊重。

（2）以辅音读音开头的单词前面加不定冠词时要用a，如a book。注意：useful, university, usual, united, European, one-eyed, one-way等单词虽然以元音字母开头，但其发音以辅音开头，故其前的不定冠词仍要用a。

Fifty years ago my grandfather was a university student of physics in a European country. 50年前我爷爷是在一个欧洲国家学习物理的一名大学生。

（3）在26个英文字母中，a, e, i, o, f, h, l, m, n, r, s, x等字母的读音是以元音音素开头，前面应用an，其他以辅音开头，要用a。

There is an “m” and a “u” in the word “mysterious”.

在mysterious这个单词中有一个m和一个u。

考点2 定冠词the的用法

1. 表示上文已提及或双方均已知晓

指上文提到过的人或物或者双方都知道的人或事物时用定冠词the。相当于this（这），that（那），these（这些），those（那些）。

A waiter came and waited. John caught my look and we both got up and, ignoring the waiter, made our way to the buffet. 一个侍者走了过来，候在附近。约翰领会了我的眼神，我们两个都站了起来，没有理睬那个侍者，朝自助餐台走去。

2. 用于独一无二的事物前

在表示世界上独一无二的事物的名词前用定冠词the。如the earth（地球），the sky（天空），the sun（太阳），the moon（月亮），the solar system（太阳系），the universe（宇宙）等情况。

Copernicus concluded that the earth goes round the sun.

哥白尼断定地球围绕着太阳旋转。

3. 用于序数词、最高级前

定冠词the用于序数词前或形容词与副词的最高级前。

Tom is the last person that I want to see. 汤姆是我最不想见的人。

Is Shanghai the second largest city in China? 上海是中国第二大城市吗？

He is the smartest boy in our class. 他是我们班最聪明的男生。

注意

① 序数词前面使用不定冠词表示“再，又”。

It’s the second time I’ve read the book. I want to read it a third time.

这是我第二次读这本书。这本书我想读第三次。

② 用于“the+比较级”表示“两者中较……的”那一个人或事物。

Of the two sisters, Betty is the younger one, but she is the tallest girl in her class.

这姊妹俩中，贝蒂是较小的那个，但在她班里她是最高的女生。

③ 有时most 表示“非常”，而不是最高级，此种情况下most之前不用the。

He is the most famous doctor in this hospital and he is a most amazing person.

他是这个医院里最著名的医生，同时他也是一个非常了不起的人。

4. 用于“the more..., the more...”结构

用于“the+比较级，the+比较级”，表示“越……越……”。

The more money you make, the more you can spend. 你挣的钱越多，能花的钱也越多。

The harder you work, the more progress you will get. 你越努力，进步就越大。

5. 定冠词还可以用于下列几种情况：

（1）用于复数姓氏前表示某某夫妇或者一家人，通常看成复数，如the Smiths（史密斯夫妇）。

（2）用在逢十的复数名词前，表示年代，如in the 1990s（在20世纪90年代）。

（3）用在表示西洋乐器的名词之前，但球类运动前不加the，如play the violin，play football。

（4）用于“动词+人+介词+the+人体部位”，用the，而不用物主代词，如beat him on the shoulder（打了他肩膀一下）。

（5）用于单位名词前表示标准：即用于“单位词”（hour, day, month, year, dozen, gallon, ton, yard等）前表示计量标准，相当于汉语的“按”“论”“每”等。但by表示“依据”讲的时候后面跟抽象名词是不用任何冠词的，by weight，by length，by width等，不用冠词。

（6）用于“the+某些形容词或过去分词”中表示一类人，如the rich，the poor。

（7）用于“the+police/public等集合名词”中表示这类人的总称。

（8）用于修饰same, only, very等形容词：即用于“the same/only/very+名词”结构中。

试阅读下面的短文，体会定冠词the的用法：

In the 1980s, the Smiths were already in their thirties and lived in a village. Their daughter liked playing the piano while their son liked playing football. Near their house there was a fair where bananas are usually sold by weight and eggs by the dozen. It was the only fair in the area. The fair was open to the public only during two open-house weekends. Both the poor and the rich went there. The old took the children in the hand tightly in case they got lost. 在20世纪80年代，史密斯夫妇已经30多岁了，他们居住在一个小山村。他们的女儿喜欢弹钢琴，而他们的儿子喜欢踢足球。在他们的房子旁边有个集市，通常按分量卖香蕉、论打出售鸡蛋。这是该地区唯一的集市，仅在两个周末接待日才对公众开放。穷人和富人都会去那里。老人紧紧地抓着孩子的手以防他们走丢。

6. 含有定冠词的常见固定短语

all the time 一直；始终

all the year around 一年到头

at the age of 在……岁时

at the same time 同时

at the beginning of 在……开始时

at the end of 在……结束时

by the end of 在……结束前

in the end 最后
in the beginning 最初，起初
in the daytime 在白天
in the afternoon/evening/morning 在下午（晚上、早晨）
the day before yesterday 前天
the day after tomorrow 后天
the other day 前些日子
at the bottom of 在……底部
at the edge of 在……边缘
at the foot of 在……脚下
at/in/on the corner of 在……角上
by the side of 在……旁边
in the direction of 向……方向
in the distance 在远处
in the middle of 在……中间
in the sky在空中
in/on the street 在大街上
in/on/to the east of 在……东面
on the left/right 在左/右边
on the ground 在地上
on the way to 在去……的路上
on the other side of 在……对面
at the top of one’s voice 大声
by the way 顺便说一下
in the darkness 在黑暗中
in the form of 以……形式
on/over the radio 通过收音机
under the leadership of 在……的领导下

with the help of 在……的帮助下

break the law 犯法

form the habit of doing sth. 养成做某事的习惯

join the army/league 参军/入团

keep the balance of nature 保持生态平衡

listen to the radio 听收音机

make the bed 收拾床铺

make the best use of 充分利用

put sb. to the trouble of doing sth. 麻烦某人做某事

take the side of 支持

tell the truth 说实话

考点3 不用冠词（零冠词）的情况

1. 职位、身份、头衔名词前

表示职位、身份、头衔的名词前不加冠词。

He was elected chairman of the committee. 他当选为委员会主席。

2. 球类、棋类名词前

表示球类、棋类等运动项目的名称前不加冠词。

play football 踢足球

play chess 下国际象棋

3. 一日三餐的名词之前

在表示一日三餐的名词前不用冠词。

have breakfast/lunch/supper 吃早饭/午饭/晚饭

4. 交通方式名词前

与by或on连用表示使用某种交通方式或交通工具的名词前不用冠词。

by bike骑自行车（=on a bike）

by ship 坐船

by plane 坐飞机

on foot 步行

5. 一些表示地点的名词前

在一些表示地点的名词前，如bed, church, school, hospital, prison等。当人们去这些地方做在这些地方原本应该做的事时，不加冠词。

go to school 去上学

go to church 去教堂祈祷

in hospital 住院

> 注意
>
> 如果在上述词组中的名词前面加上定冠词the，则表示去这些场所做其他的事情。
>
> His mother is in hospital and he has been in the hospital to take care of her.
>
> 他妈妈生病住院了，他就一直在医院里面照顾她。

6. 使用定冠词与不使用定冠词的短语辨析

固定短语中含定冠词与不含定冠词时含义有差别。

in the front of 在……(范围内的)前面	in front of 在……(范围外的)前面
at table 吃饭；进餐	at the table 在桌旁
go to school 开始求学；到校上课	go to the school 去学校（但不一定是上学）
in charge of (=take charge of) 主管，负责，看管	in the charge of 在……的管理之下
at sight 一看见就	at the sight of 在看到……时
in case of 假使；如果；万一	in the case of 就……来说
last week (month...) 指现在讲话时以前的那个星期（月……）	the last week (month...) 指相对于过去某个时间而言的上一个星期（月……）
go to sea 出航；当水手	go to the sea 去海边

二、名词

名词是表示人、事物、地点或抽象概念的名称的词，有专有名词和普通名词之分，还有可数名词与不可数名词之分。

考点1 常见名词构词法

常见的构成抽象名词的后缀

1. 由-ment构成

-ment表示行为结果或具体工具。

move（移动，使运动）—movement（移动，运动）

develop（发展）—development（发展）

measure（测量）—measurement（测量）

equip（装备）—equipment（装备，设备）

achieve（达到，完成）—achievement（达到；成就）

agree（同意；商定）—agreement（同意；协议）

2. 由-tion, -ation, -sion构成

-tion, -ation, -sion等表示行为的过程。

explain（解释）—explanation（解释）

produce（生产）—production（生产）

divide（划分）—division（划分）

express（表示，表达）—expression（表示，表达）

3. 由-ness构成

形容词后加后缀-ness。

cold（寒冷的）—coldness（寒冷）

dark（黑暗的）—darkness（黑暗）

useful（有用的）—usefulness（用处，实用性）

exact（精确的）—exactness（精确）

4. 由-ence，-ance构成

某些动词或形容词后面加后缀-ence或-ance可构成相应的抽象名词。

enter（进入）—entrance（入口处）

resist（抵抗）—resistance（抵抗）

depend（依靠，依赖）—dependence（依靠，依赖）

different（不同的）—difference（不同，差别）

absent（缺席的，不在的）—absence（缺席，不在）

refer（参考）—reference（参考）

important（重要的）—importance（重要性）

5. 由-y，-ty，-ity构成

某些形容词后面加-y, -ty, -ity等表示性质状态的后缀，构成抽象名词。

difficult（困难的）—difficulty（困难）

electric（电的）—electricity（电）

safe（安全的）—safety（安全）

cruel（残酷的）—cruelty（残酷）

able（有能力的）—ability（能力）

active（积极的，活跃的）—activity（活动）

注意

下列动词变名词时变化形式较灵活，易出现拼写错误，需加以注意。

succeed—success 成功

pronounce—pronunciation 发音

explain—explanation 解释

decide—decision 决定

enter—entrance 进入

permit—permission 允许
refuse—refusal 拒绝
consider—consideration 考虑
discover—discovery 发现
bury—burial 埋葬
conclude推断—conclusion 结论
arrive—arrival 到达
weigh重—weight 重量

考点2 抽象名词具体化

抽象名词一般为不可数名词，但当抽象名词表示具体的东西时，可用作可数名词且词义发生变化，这种语言现象叫抽象名词的具体化。

用作抽象名词（不可数）	具体化（为个体名词，可数）
in surprise 惊讶地	a surprise 一件令人惊讶的事
win success 获得成功	a success 一个（件）成功的人（事）
win honor 赢得荣誉	an honor 一件引以为荣的事
Failure is the mother of success. 失败是成功之母。	a failure 一个失败者
by experience 靠经验	an experience 一次经历
full of youth and vitality 充满了青春和活力	a youth 一个青年人
have pity on sb. 怜悯某人	a pity 可惜的事情
with pleasure 乐意	a pleasure 乐事

He had had six failures and would have a seventh try.

他已经历六次失败，并将进行第七次尝试。

A knowledge of English is a must in international trade.

懂英语对于做国际贸易来说是必不可少的。

She made an apology to her mother for her wrong doings. 她为自己做错了事向妈妈道歉。

考点3 名词的数

1. 可数名词变复数的规则变化

（1）一般直接在词尾加-s：

清辅音后读/s/。map—maps

浊辅音和元音后读/z/。bag—bags car—cars

（2）以s, sh, ch, x等结尾的词加-es，读/iz/。bus—buses；watch—watches

> 注意 stomach—stomachs

（3）以y结尾的专有名词或以元音字母+y结尾的名词变复数时，直接加-s。

two Marys; the Henrys; monkey—monkeys; holiday—holidays

（4）以o结尾的名词变复数时：

若词尾字母o的前面是辅音字母，变为复数时，有一些加-es。如：

hero—heroes potato—potatoes tomato—tomatoes

助记：Heroes eat potatoes and tomatoes.（英雄吃马铃薯和西红柿，简称“英雄吃二菜”）。

> 注意
>
> 还有一些加-s。
>
> photo—photos piano—pianos radio—radios zoo—zoos

助记：照纲（钢）收租（zoo），只加-s。

（5）以f或fe结尾的名词变复数时，有的加-s, 有的变f或fe为v再加-es：

① 只加-s的情况。

chief—chiefs belief—beliefs roof—roofs

cliff—cliffs safe—safes gulf—gulfs

助记：“长官”“信仰”“房顶”和“悬崖”是“安全”的“港湾”。

② 变f或fe为v再加-es的情况。

wife—wives half—halves knife—knives wolf—wolves

leaf—leaves life—lives thief—thieves

助记：“妻子”用“半”把“刀”阻止“狼”成为偷盗“树叶”“生命”的“小偷”。

2. 可数名词变复数不规则变化

（1）child—children foot—feet tooth—teeth

mouse—mice man—men woman—women

> 注意
>
> 由一个词加man或woman构成的合成词，其复数形式也是-men和-women，如an Englishman，two Englishmen。注意，German不是合成词，故其复数形式为Germans。

（2）单复数同形，如deer, sheep, fish, Chinese, Japanese等。

（3）以-s结尾，仍为单数的名词。

① maths, politics, physics等学科名词，一般是不可数名词，为单数。

② news为不可数名词。

③ 以复数形式出现的书名、剧名、报纸、杂志名，也可视为单数。

The Arabian Nights is a very interesting story-book.《一千零一夜》是一本非常有趣的故事书。

④ 表示由两部分构成的东西，如glasses, trousers, clothes等，若表达具体数目，要借助数量名词pair（对，双）和suit（套）等。如a pair of glasses, two pairs of trousers。

另外还有一些名词，其复数形式有时可表示特别含义，如goods（货物）, waters（水域），fishes（各种鱼）。

3. 不可数名词

比较常见的不可数名词有：advice, news, information, progress, work, fun, weather, music, health, luck等。

> 注意

① hair指一个人头上的全部头发时，是不可数名词；但如果指每一根毛发时，就是可数的，可以说one hair（一根头发），two hairs（两根头发等）。

② 可以说drink beer（啤酒），drink coffee（咖啡），drink gin（杜松子酒），但在要酒水的时候应说a（glass of）beer（一杯啤酒），a gin（一杯杜松子酒），two gins（两杯杜松子酒）等。

③ experience指“经历”时是可数名词。

He had an exciting experience/some exciting experiences last week.

上星期他有一次/一些激动人心的经历。

④ work意为“职业，就业，工作”时是不可数名词。如：

He is looking for work/for a job. 他在求职/找一份工作。

works（只有复数形式）可以表示“工厂”。此外，works（通常用复数形式）还可指文学或音乐作品：Shakespeare’s complete works莎士比亚全集

考点4 名词的所有格

在英语中，名词的所有格表示所属关系，它分-’s所有格和of所有格两种形式。一般来说，’s所有格多用于有生命的东西，而of所有格往往用于无生命的东西。

Tom’s best friend is Mary. 汤姆最好的朋友是玛丽。（Tom’s 是所有格）

The title of the book is interesting. 这本书的书名很有趣。（of the book是所有格）

1. -’s所有格的构成方法

一般情况（包括单数名词和不带词尾-s的复数名词）加-’s：

children’s books 儿童图书

today’s paper今天的报纸

带词尾-s的复数名词只加省字撇（’）：

girls’ school 女子学校

the Smiths’ car 史密斯家的小汽车

注意

① 带词尾-s的单数名词，通常仍加-’s：

the boss’s plan 老板的计划

the hostess’s worry 女主人的担心

② 带词尾-s的人名，可加’s 或只加省字撇（’）：

Dickens’ novels 狄更斯的小说

Charles’s job 查尔斯的工作

③ 用and连接的并列名词的所有格要分两种情况，即表示各自的所有关系时，要分别在并列名词后加-’s，表示共同的所有关系时，只在最后一个名词后加-’s。

Tom’s and Jim’s rooms 汤姆和吉姆（各自）的房间

Tom and Jim’s room 汤姆和吉姆（共同）的房间

2. of+名词构成的所有关系

of所有格多用于无生命的东西，如：the cover of the book（这本书的封面）。但也有许多例外，如：

the housing problem of the poor 穷人的住房问题

the skills of the workers who have been well trained 训练有素的工人的技能

注意

有些表示时间、距离等无生命的名词和表示世界、国家、城镇等的名词，也可以在词尾加’s或撇（’），变成相应的所有格。

five minutes’ walk 五分钟的路程

today’s newspaper 今天的报纸

3. 双重所有格

双重所有格是指将-’s所有格与of所有格结合起来一起使用，即“of+名词’s”的形式，表示整体中的一个或部分。用于修饰of前面的名词，但此时of前面的名词一定要有一个a（an）, two, any, some, several, no, few, another或this, that, these, those之类的修饰语（这个修饰语一般不能是one和the）。

Two classmates of my sister’s will come to join us. 我姐姐的两个同学会加入我们。

双重所有格也可由“of+名词性物主代词”构成。如：a friend of mine 我的一位朋友。

三、代词

代词是代替名词的词类。大多数代词具有名词和形容词的功能。英语中的代词，按其意义、特征及在句中的作用分为：人称代词、物主代词、指示代词、反身代词、相互代词、疑问代词、关系代词、连接代词和不定代词九种。

考点1 人称代词主格与宾格的用法

人称代词有主格和宾格之分，主格代词在句中一般用作主语、表语等，宾格代词在句中用作动词的宾语和介词的宾语。

If you keep a pet, you need to spend some time taking care of it. 如果你养宠物，你需要花费一些时间照料它。（两个you分别作主语，为主格；it指代前半句中的pet，作宾语，为宾格）

注意

① we, you, they有时可用来泛指“人们”。

They say prices are going to rise again. 据说，物价又要上涨了。

② she可以用来代指国家、船只、大地、月亮等。

China will always do what she has promised to do. 中国从来都是说话算话的。

The Titanic was on her first voyage when she sank.

泰坦尼克号巨轮是在首航途中沉没的。

③ 注意人称代词并列时的顺序：

You and I are good friends. 你和我是好朋友。（出于礼貌）

Tom and I left home early this morning.

汤姆和我今天一大早就离开了家。（出于礼貌）

You and he must be there at seven o’clock.

你和他必须7点钟到达那里。（you较近，he较远）

You, he and I will be put in the same class.

你、我、他将被分在同一个班。（注意汉英两种语言的不同表达顺序）

考点2 名词性和形容词性物主代词的用法

物主代词是表示所有关系的代词，可以分为形容词性和名词性两种。

形容词性物主代词不可单独使用，必须放在名词前作定语。

My name is John Green. 我叫约翰·格林。

They wash their hair every day. 他们每天都洗头发。

名词性物主代词可以独立使用，相当于“形容词性物主代词+名词”，可单独作主语、宾语和表语。

These are his books. Yours are over there. 这些是他的书。你的在那里。（用作主语）

I forgot to bring my dictionary. Could I use yours?

我忘了带词典，我可以用一下你的吗？（用作宾语）

Whose book is this? —It’s hers. 这是谁的书？——是她的。（用作表语）

考点3 反身代词的用法

反身代词是一种表示反射或强调的代词，表示“我（们）自己”“你（们）自己”“他/她/它（们）自己”。第一、二人称的反身代词是由形容词性物主代词加-self或-selves构成，第三人称的反身代词由人称代词的宾格加-self或-selves构成。反身代词常用作宾语、表语和同位语。

1. 作宾语

有些动词常与反身代词连用，如bathe, amuse, blame, feed, dress, cut, enjoy, hurt, introduce, behave等。

Little Albert is only four, but he can feed himself, wash himself and dress himself.

小艾伯特刚四岁，但他能够自己吃饭、洗脸和穿衣了。

常用的由反身代词构成的表达：

dress oneself 自己穿衣

devote oneself to 致力于

enjoy oneself 过得快乐

help oneself to 随便吃、随便用

hide oneself 把自己藏起来

say to oneself 心里想

seat oneself 坐下

talk/speak to oneself 自言自语

teach oneself 自学

2. 作表语

反身代词可以用作表语。

The boy in the picture is myself, not anyone else. 照片上的男孩不是别人正是我自己。

I am not myself today. 我今天不舒服。

3. 作同位语

反身代词可以用来加强名词或代词的语气，强调“自己；亲自；本人”等意思，通常跟在名词、代词之后，但也可位于句尾，此时的反身代词应重读。

I’m afraid I can’t help you. You’ll have to do it yourself.

我恐怕不能帮你，你得自己做。（作主语You的同位语）

You should ask the students themselves.

你应该问学生们自己。（作宾语students的同位语）

此外，反身代词还常和for, of, in, by等介词搭配，构成固定短语：

for oneself 亲自

of oneself 自动地

in oneself 本身固有

by oneself 独自

考点4 疑问代词

疑问代词有who（谁，主格），whom（谁，宾格），whose（谁的，所有格），what（什么）和which（哪个，哪些）等。疑问代词一般都放在句首，并在句中作为某一句子成分。

Who is going to speak to us tomorrow? 明天谁来跟我们讲话？（who作主语）

Whom are you talking about?你们在说谁？（whom作宾语，但在句首时口语中常用who代替whom）

Whose umbrella is this? 这是谁的伞？（whose作定语）

What did he say? 他说什么？（what作宾语）

Which is yours, the blue pen or the red one?蓝笔和红笔，哪一支是你的？（which作主语）

疑问代词可用于名词性从句中，用在名词性从句中时，原倒装的语序需改为陈述句语序。

Do you know what he has said? 你知道他说了什么吗？

（疑问代词what引导一个宾语从句，而它本身又在从句中作宾语）

Who will be in charge of the work is still not decided. 谁将负责这项工作现在还没定。

（疑问代词who引导一个主语从句，它本身又在从句中用作主语）

考点5 不定代词

1. both, either和neither

both意为“（两者）都”，either意为“（两者中）任意一个”，neither

意为“（两者）都不”。若要指三者或三者以上，则用all表示“（三者）都”，用any表示“（三者中）任何一个”，用none表示“（三者）都不”等。比较：

He has two sons, both of whom are clever. 他有两个儿子，都很聪明。

He has three sons, all of whom are clever. 他有三个儿子，都很聪明。

He has two sons, either of whom is clever. 他有两个儿子，哪个都很聪明。

He has three sons, any of whom is clever. 他有三个儿子，哪个都很聪明。

He has two sons, neither of whom is clever. 他有两个儿子，两个都不聪明。

He has three sons, none of whom are clever. 他有三个儿子，个个都不聪明。

2. each和every

each可用作代词、形容词和副词，every是形容词，仅具有形容词功能。

（1）each指两个或两个以上的人或事物中的“每个”，强调one by one的含义；every是指三个以上的人或事物的“全体”，和all的意思相近。

He gave a book to each of his parents. 他给他父母各送了一本书。

Every worker was there and each did his own work.

每个工人都在那儿，各人做各人的工作。

（2）each作形容词时，修饰单数名词，接动词第三人称单数形式；作代词时，单独使用，接动词第三人称单数形式；放在复数名词和代词后作同位语时，谓语动词用复数形式。若each of them作主语，谓语动词可用单数形式也可用复数形式。

Each man carries his own bag.（修饰单数名词）各人背自己的包。

We each have our own office.（作we的同位语）我们各有各的办公室。

Each carries his own bag.（代词）各人背自己的包。

Each of them are/is here.（代词）他们每个人都在这儿。

（3）every与not连用，表示部分否定；each作代词时一般不与否定句连用，在否定句中多用neither, none, no等来代替。

Every man is not honest. 并非每个人都诚实。

（4）each的前面不可以使用almost, nearly, not等词汇，但every之前可以采用。注意，each of不可以用于否定句中，需使用none of来表达。

Almost every window was broken.

几乎每一扇窗户都是破的。（不可用almost each）

Not every child enjoyed the party.

并非每一个孩子都喜欢这个派对。（不可用not each）

None of the answers were correct.

所有答案都是不正确的。（不可用each of... not...）

注意

① every总是修饰单数名词，其后接动词第三人称单数形式。

Every child in the class passed the examination. 班上所有的孩子都通过了这次考试。

② 代表each和every的物主代词可以用his，也可以用their。

Each carried their/his own bag. 各人背他们/他自己的包。

3. some和any

some多用于肯定句，any多用于否定句、疑问句或条件句。在表示请求、建议、反问或是希望得到肯定回答的疑问句中，常用some而不用any。另外，some可与数词连用，表示“大约”的意思。

Would you mind buying me some candies on your way home?

你能在回家的路上，帮我买些糖果吗？

Will you give me some paper? 给我一点纸好吗？

She gained some 25 pounds in weight during pregnancy.

怀孕期间她体重增加了大约25磅。

4. few, a few, little, a little

（1）few / a few用来修饰可数名词。few表示否定意义，意为“没有，几乎没有”；a few表示肯定意义，意为“有几个”。例如：

He has few friends here, so he feels lonely. 他在这里没什么朋友，因此感到寂寞。

There are a few eggs in the basket. 篮子里有几个鸡蛋。

（2）little / a little用来修饰不可数名词，little表示否定意义，意为“没有，几乎没有”；a little 表示肯定意义，意为“有一点儿”，例如：

There is little ink in my bottle. Can you give me a little ink?

我的瓶子里几乎没有墨水了，你能给我点儿墨水吗？

5. another, the other, others

（1）another或“another+单数可数名词”泛指“另一个，再一个”，其复数形式是others或“other+复数名词”，泛指“别的人（或事物）”。常见的搭配有“one... another...”,“some... others...”。

This glass is broken. Give me another, please. 这个杯子破了，请给我另拿一个。

There are many people in the park. Some are walking, some are jogging, and others are dancing. 公园里有许多人，一些在散步，一些在慢跑，还有一些在跳舞。

（2）the other（+单数可数名词）特指两者中的另一个，常有“one... the other...”的搭配；其复数形式the others或“the other+复数名词”特指在某些人或物中，除去一部分之后“其余的，剩下的”人或物。

He has a book in one hand, and a pen in the other.

他一只手拿着一本书，另一只手拿着一支钢笔。

Of the four boys, one is in Grade One, the others are in Grade Two.

在这四个男生中，一个是一年级的，其余的是二年级的。

（3）another还可以用于“another+基数词+复数名词”中，如another three cups（再来三杯）。

与other和another相关的习惯用语：

other than（除……之外）

each other=one another（相互）

one after another（一个接一个）

6. 复合不定代词

由some, any, no, every加上-body, -one, -thing构成的不定代词，叫做复合不定代词。常见的复合不定代词有：

somebody 某人

someone 某人

something 某物，某事

anybody 任何人

anyone 任何人

nobody 无一人

everybody 每个人

everyone 每个人

everything 每件事物；一切

nothing 无一物

复合不定代词相当于名词，在句中可以作主语、宾语和表语，而不能作定语。

Everything goes as planned. 一切都按计划进行。（作主语）

I don’t have anything to say. 我没什么要说的。（作宾语）

Money is not everything. 金钱不是万能的。（作表语）

> 注意
>
> 复合不定代词被定语所修饰时，定语必须放在它们的后面。
>
> There is nothing wrong with the machine. 这台机器没有什么问题。

考点6 替代词it, that,（the）one（s）, those的用法辨析

1. 替代词it, one, that辨析

it/one/that三者均可用作代词，指代前面提到的名词。一般说来，it指代的是上文提到的同一物品，简单来说，就是指代同名同物；one与that则指代同名异物。

I have lost my umbrella; I'm looking for it.

我的伞丢了，我正在找它。（该句中it指前面提到的my umbrella）

I have lost my umbrella; I think I must buy one. 我的伞丢了，我想我必须买一把了。

（one在该句中表泛指，因为my umbrella已经丢了）

The umbrella you bought is cheaper than that I bought. 你买的伞要比我买的那把便宜。

（替代词that在该句中特指the umbrella I bought，以区别the umbrella you bought）

2. one与ones的区别

one=a/an+上文出现的名词，复数用ones，主格和宾格相同。

There are many schoolbags. I want to buy one.

有很多书包，我想买一个。（= I want to buy a schoolbag.）

The only jokes I tell are the ones that I hear from my friends.

我讲的笑话都是我从朋友那里听来的。（the ones相当于the jokes）

3. that与the+名词

that=the+上文出现的名词，包括可数名词单数和不可数名词，指代复数名词时用those。

The weather in Nanjing is hotter than that in Beijing. 南京的天气要比北京的热。

（that=the weather，但并非指上文的天气，而是另外一个天气）

注意

① 替代单数可数名词时用one和that均可，一般泛指用one（相当于a/an+名词）；特指时用that（相当于the+名词）。

I don't have a computer, and I've decided to buy one.

我没有电脑，我决定买一台。（表泛指，one=a computer）

The computer is different from that we are using. 这台电脑和我们正用的那台不一样。

（表特指，其中that也可表示为the one，含义相当于the computer）

② 后跟of短语时，一般只能用that（those）。

The light of the sun is much brighter than that of the moon.

太阳的光线要比月亮上的光线强烈得多。

③ 代替特指的可数名词时，若无前置定语，that或the one可以互相换用。

This film is more interesting than that（the one）we saw last night.

这部电影比我们昨天晚上看的那部有趣得多。

考点7 it非人称代词的用法

1. it表示时间、距离、价值、天气、气候及温度等

it 作非人称代词时，主要用于指时间、距离、价值、天气、气候及温度等。

It’s too late to go there now. 现在去那儿已经太迟了。

It rained all day yesterday. 昨天下了一天的雨。

It can get very hot here. 这里有时会很热。

2. it引导的强调句型

it引导的强调句的结构为：It+be+被强调部分+that/who+其他。此类强调句由普通句子转换而来，用来强调句子的主语、宾语或状语等。

Karl bought Mary a bicycle on her birthday.

卡尔在玛丽生日那天给她买了一辆自行车。

It was Karl that/who bought Mary a bicycle on her birthday.

是卡尔在玛丽的生日那天给她买了一辆自行车。（强调主语）

It was a bicycle that Karl bought Mary on her birthday.

卡尔在玛丽生日那天给她买的是一辆自行车。（强调直接宾语）

注意

not... until...句型也可用于强调句型，其结构为：It is not until+被强调部分+that+其他，表示“直到……才……”。

It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I realized she was a film star.

=I didn’t realize she was a famous film star until she took off her dark glasses.

=Not until she took off her dark glasses did I realize she was a film star.

直到她摘下墨镜，我才意识到她是一位电影演员。

3. it用作形式主语

当不定式、动名词、从句等复杂成分用作句子主语时，为保持句子平衡，通常把真正的主语放在句末，而在句首使用形式主语it。

（1）It+be+adj.+for/of sb. to do sth. 意为“某人做某事……”，在该结构中，当形容词侧重描述某人的品质、特征时，需使用of，当侧重动作本身时则需用for。

It’s very kind of you to help me with my English. 你帮助我学习英语，真是太好了。

It’s very hard for me to answer such a complicated question.

回答这样一个复杂的问题对于我来说太难了。

（2）It takes sb.+时间段+to do sth. 意为“某人做某事花了……时间”。

It took me two months to finish writing this book. 我花了两个月的时间写完了这本书。

（3）It is said/reported/learned that...意为“据说/据报道/据悉……”。

It is reported that a female worker in the gas station put out the fire.

据报道，加油站的一位女工扑灭了这起火灾。

（4）It is suggested/ordered that...意为“据建议/有命令……”，主句中的过去分词是表示请求、建议、命令等词时，that后的从句要用虚拟语气，谓语部分采用“should+动词原形”的形式，其中should可以省略。

It is suggested that some measures（should）be taken to protect the special plant.

有人建议采取一些措施来保护这种特殊植物。

4. it作形式宾语

当不定式、动名词、从句等复杂成分用作宾语且其后跟有宾语补足语时，通常会使用形式宾语it代替，而将真正的宾语移至句末，其基本结构为“动词+it+宾语补足语+不定式（动名词或从句）”。常用于该结构的动词有：think, believe, make, find, consider, feel, take等。

I find it hard to translate this Chinese sentence into English.

我发觉把这句汉语翻译成英文很难。

> 注意
>
> 某些表示“喜、怒、哀、乐”的动词，如like, enjoy, love, hate等，往往不能直接跟宾语从句，需使用it作形式宾语。
>
> I don’t like it that he’s so lazy. 我不喜欢他那么懒惰。

5. it用于表示时间的固定句型

（1）It’s time for sth. 意为“该做某事了”。

It’s time for class. 该上课了。

（2）It’s time to do sth. 意为“该做某事的时候了”。

It’s time to have lunch. 到吃午餐的时间了。

（3）It’s time for sb. to do sth. 意为“某人该做某事了”。

It’s time for us to go home. 我们该回家了。

（4）It’s（about/high）time+that从句，意为“某人该做某事了”，从句谓语动词需用过去式，有时也用“should+动词原形”的形式，其中should不可省略。

It’s high time you started thinking about saving for your old age.

你早就该开始考虑存钱以养老了。

（5）It’s the first（second）time+that从句，意为“某人第一/二次做某事”，从句谓语动词需用现在完成时。

It’s the first time that the boy has spoken to a foreigner.

这是这个小男孩第一次和外国人说话。

（6）It’s+时间段+since从句，意为“自从……有一段时间了”。

How time flies! It’s three months since I saw you last time.

光阴似箭！距离我们上次见面已经三个月了。

（7）It’s+时间段+before从句，意为“过多长的时间才……”。

It was several minutes before we realised what was happening.

过了几分钟之后，我们才意识到发生了什么。

四、数词

考点1 基数词

1. 基数词的基本用法

用作基数词单位的hundred, thousand, million, billion 通常不带复数词尾-s，但若用于表示数百、数千、数百万这样的泛指，则用复数。

About two thousand people died in the earthquake. 大约有两千人在地震中丧生。

Thousands of people go to the seaside every year. 每年成千上万的人到海滨去。

2. 表示整十的基数词的用法

表示整十的基数词用复数形式可以表示人的大概岁数或某个年代。

He is in his early twenties. 他的年纪在二十出头。

This story took place in the 1930s. 故事发生在20世纪30年代。

考点2 序数词

1. 序数词的构成

大多数的序数词是由基数词加-th构成，如：seven—seventh, ten—tenth

以-t结尾的基数词只在词尾加-h，如：eight—eighth

以-ve结尾的基数词改-ve为f再加-th，如：five—fifth, twelve—twelfth

以-y结尾的基数词改-y为-ie再加-th，如：twenty—twentieth, thirty—thirtieth

几十几的序数词只在个位数体现，如：twenty-one—twenty-first, thirty-three—thirty-third

特殊的序数词：one—first, two—second, three—third, nine—ninth

2. 不定冠词a与序数词连用

序数词前加冠词a表示“再一次”。例如：

Can I try a second time? 我可以再试一次吗？

3. 序数词用于分数中

描述分数时，分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于1时，分母加s。例如：

1/5：one fifth

2/3：two thirds

考点3 考查倍数的表达法

英语中表达倍数常用下列句型：

A is three/four... times the size/height/length/width... of B.

A is three/four... times as big/high/long/wide... as B.

A is three/four... times bigger/higher/longer/wider... than B.

... times+more+名词+than...

... times+as many（或much）+名词+as...

... times+what从句

用times表示倍数时，一般只限于三倍或三倍以上的倍数，表示两倍常用twice或double。

The box is one-third bigger than that one. 这个盒子比那个盒子大三分之一。

This dictionary is five times as thick as the one you borrowed from the library.

这本词典的厚度是你从图书馆借的那本（厚度）的5倍。

This river is three times the depth of that one. 这条河是那条河的3倍深。

He earns five times more money than he did ten years ago.

他现在挣的钱比十年前挣的多5倍。

He has got three times as many books as his sister.

他所拥有的书的数量是他妹妹的3倍。

The price of the meat is twice what it was last year. 肉价是去年的两倍。

考点4 与数词相关的主谓一致原则

1. 表示时间、路程、金钱或重量等复数数量名词的主谓一致

当名词词组中心词为表示时间、路程、金钱或重量等复数名词时，往往根据意义一致的原则，把这些复数名词看作一个整体，谓语采用单数形式。

Twenty dollars is not enough. 二十美元是不够的。

Two months has passed before we realized that. 过了两个月我们才意识到那一点。

但是如果数词（大于1）单独使用来表示人或物，谓语动词一般用复数形式。

Three were killed and ten were missing in that accident.在那起事故中，三人丧生，十人失踪。

2. 分数、百分数中的主谓一致

如果句子主语是“分数或百分数+of+名词或代词”的形式，谓语动词的单、复数形式取决于of介词短语中的名词或代词的数：如果of介词短语中的名词或代词为单数含义或为不可数名词，谓语动词用单数形式；

如果of介词短语中名词或代词为复数含义，谓语动词也用复数形式。

Two thirds of the earth is covered with water. 地表的三分之二被水覆盖。

Two thirds of the people present are against the plan.

在场的人中有三分之二反对这项计划。

3. “many a/more than one+单数名词”结构的主谓一致

如果主语是“many a/more than one+单数名词”的形式，尽管从意义上看是复数，但谓语动词仍用单数形式。

Many a student in this class has expected a long break.

班级里的很多学生都期待能多休息一会儿。

专项练习

Ⅰ. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. It is said the early European playing-cards were designed for entertainment and education.

2. There are about three hundreds people in the park on National Day.

3. This tree is three times as taller as that one.

4. What a nice weather it is today!

5. In fact this is a hard job for the police to keep order in an important football match.

6. I often see pens here and there in the room, but I can never find it when I want to write.

7. There are more than fifty students in his class, but only few of them like music.

8. Did you have any difficulties in working out the math problem?

9. At a moment she is on holiday, but she’ll be back tomorrow.

10. In England as early as the twelve century, young people enjoyed playing football.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

11. The police gained a great deal of useful _____（inform）about the organization.

12. I wasn't interested in novels, so I didn't get much _____（enjoy）out of that novel.

13. The railway station is at a _____（distant）of two miles from our school.

14. The _____（interview）can get a chance to show his confidence, working ability and educational background.

15. I would appreciate _____ if you can help me to solve the technical problem.

16. In many ways, the education system in the US is not very different from _____ in the UK.

17. Spain is _____ European country.

18. It was in 1956 _____ Susanna started the work on the garden.

19. This e-dictionary doesn't belong to _____（I）.

20. My parents are in _____（agree）on what color to paint the house.

21. Every possible means _____（use）to prevent the air pollution, but the sky is still not clear.

22. I have finished a large part of the novel written by Dickens, the rest of which _____ very difficult.

23. —How about _____ talent show yesterday?

—I should say it was _____ great success.

24. It is not rare in the1980s that people in their _____（fifty）are going to university for further education.

25. It took thousands of people many years _____（build）the Great Wall.

26. I knew that _____ would ever discourage him; he would never give up wanting to be a director.

27. When righting, pay close attention to the _____（nine）or end paragraph in the translation.

28. This bridge is three times the _____（long）of that one.

29. You may drop in or just give me a call. _____ will do.

30. We should make every effort to prevent violence happening at school, for more and more students would drop out of school if their personal _____（safe）could not be guaranteed.

Ⅲ. 单项选择。

31. Many people in the west make _____ a rule to buy Chinese presents for their relatives and friends.

A. this

B. it

C. that

D. them

32. _____ of the land in that district _____ covered with trees and grass.

A. two fifth; is

B. Two fifth; are

C. Two fifths; is

D. Two fifths; are

33. —Bring me _____, please.

—How would you like it, black or white?

A. coffee

B. a coffee

C. the coffee

D. coffees

34. I know you don’t like _____ music very much. But what do you think of _____ music in the film we saw yesterday?

A. /; /

B. the; the

C. the; /

D. /; the

35. Tom made the same mistake for _____ second time, dropping _____ “n” in the word “government”.

A. a; /

B. a; a

C. the; /

D. a; an

36. Miss Liu is in _____ charge of our class and Class Two is in _____ charge of Mr. Wang.

A. a; /

B. the; /

C. /; the

D. a; the

37. The factory used 65 percent of the raw materials, the rest of which _____ saved for other purposes.

A. is

B. are

C. was

D. were

38. A poet and artist _____ coming to speak to us about Chinese literature and painting tomorrow afternoon.

A. is

B. are

C. was

D. were

39. We had a picnic last term and it was a lot of fun, so let’s have _____ one this month.

A. the other

B. some

C. another

D. other

40. It is reported that the single country uses _____ energy as the whole of Europe.

A. as three times

B. three times much

C. three times much as

D. three times as much

IV. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

“Line” is a simple, four-letter word, but it has many __**41**__（mean）, making a simple word complex.

Let’s say a friend of __**42**__（you）, Simone, is an accountant. She has a good job and is in line for __**43**__ promotion at work. Simone doesn’t make much money. So, you hope she gets the high-level, better paying position.

But, Simone doesn’t feel the same way. She has dreams of becoming a professional singer. She takes voice lessons every night and joins a singing group on the weekends. These __**44**__（activity）change her lifestyle. She stays out late at night and comes in late to work. And she often sings at her desk! This __**45**__（behave）puts the likelihood of her promotion on the line.

Something “on the line” is at a critical point or is at risk. Sometimes when using this __**46**__（express）, a person says simply there is a lot on the line or too much on the line, meaning that much can be lost.

In fact, things get worse. She often leaves town for weeks at a time, touring around the country with her singing group. Now, her job is really on the line.

You walk the line between warning her about landing on the unemployment line and respecting her privacy. “Walk the line” has two meanings. __**47**__ is to hold a position, usually on middle ground, between two very different __**48**__（choose）. The other meaning of walk the line is the one Johnny Cash sings about. In his song, he sings about behaving well

with the love of his life.

"I find __**49**__ very, very easy to be true. I find __**50**__（I）alone when each day is through. Yes, I'll admit that I'm a fool for you. Because you're mine, I walk the line."

Unit 2 介词和并列连词

语法精讲

一、介词

介词是一种虚词，不能单独使用。介词之后一般有名词或代词（宾格）或相当于名词的其他词类、短语或从句作它的宾语，即构成介词短语。

考点1 常见介词及其辨析

1. 表示地点时at，in，on 的区别

at 后面接的是较小的地方，比如村庄、小城镇、门牌等，in后面接较大的地方，比如国家、城市等；on表示在某物之上，且表面接触。例如：road前用on，即on the road；street前用in/on；farm前用on，即on the farm；field前用in，即in the field。

2. 表示时间时at，in，on的区别

（1）at表示时间点。

at six 在六点

at noon 在中午

at midnight 在午夜

at night 在夜里

at sunrise 在太阳落山时

at the weekend 在周末

at Christmas 在圣诞节

（2）on表示在特定的某一天或某天的上午、下午、晚上等。

on Monday 在周一

on Sunday afternoon 在周日下午

（3）in表示一段时间，后接小时、周、月、年、季等表示一段时间的名词。

in three hours 三小时后

in a week 一周之后

in a month 一个月之后

in three years 三年之后

3. 表持续时间的since, for, in, after的区别

（1）since 接过去的某个时间点，表示“自……以来”，常用于完成时。

She has been working here since 2007. 自2007年以来，她一直在这里工作。

（2）for 接一段具体的时间，常用于完成时，表示时间的延续。

I have studied English for 7 years. 我学习英语7年了。

（3）“in+一段时间”与非延续性动词连用，表示一段时间以后，多用于将来时。

Jack will be back in a week. 杰克会在一周之后回来。

（4）“after+一段时间”表示“……之后”，常用于过去时。

After one month, the baby began to learn climbing. 一个月之后，宝宝开始学爬了。

4. 表方位的介词in, on, to, off的区别

（1）in表示在境内。

in China 在中国

in Europe 在欧洲

（2）on表示相邻或在边界上，不在境内。

on the border between Kenya and Tanzania在肯尼亚和坦桑尼亚边境

（3）to表示在境外、不接壤。

Beijing lies to the north of Shanghai. 北京位于上海的北部。

（4）off表示在海面上靠近海岸的地方。

off the southwest coast of the U.S. 靠近美国西南海岸

5. 表示运动方向或目的的介词

（1）across表示穿过物体表面或横过。

across the street 穿过街道

across the English Channel 横跨英吉利海峡

（2）through表示在某一空间通过或纵向穿过。

through the forest 穿过森林

go through the valley 穿过峡谷

（3）along 表示沿着一条线平行。

go along the bank of the river 沿着河岸走

（4）up 表示向上，由南到北，由东到西，由沿海到内陆，由小地方到大地方，由农村到城市，反之则用down。

go up to London for the day 今天上伦敦去

drive all the way down from Wuhan to Guilin 一路驱车从武汉南下桂林

（5）to表示动作的目的地。

travel to Beijing 到北京旅游

our weekly trip to the supermarket 我们每周去超市

（6）towards 指朝向，而无到达的意思。

walk towards the river 朝着河走去

look out towards the sea 向外面的大海看

（7）for表示前往的目的，与其连用的动词有leave, start off, set out, head, sail等。

leave for New York 前往纽约

a ship heading for Dalian 开往大连的轮船

6. 表示“除……之外”的介词

besides：表示包含，意为“除……之外还有……”。

Besides the Black, six couples attended the party last Saturday.

除了布莱克夫妇之外，还有六对夫妇也参加了上周六的聚会。

except：表示排除，意为“除……之外”。

The museum is open every day except Tuesday. 这家博物馆除星期二外，每天都营业。

but：表示排除，多与nobody, none, no one, nothing, anything, everyone, all, who等连用。

Nothing but trouble will come of this plan. 这个计划只能带来麻烦。

except for：表示除去整体中的部分，意为“只是，只不过”，有大体肯定、细节指正的意思。

Your composition is very good except for a few spelling mistakes.

除了几个拼写错误之外，你的作文很棒。

7. among和between

among：表示三个或以上的人或物之间，后接复数名词或集体名词。

The news sparked a heated debate among people on social media.

这一消息在社交媒体上引发了人们的激烈讨论。

between：用于两者之间，或三个以上的两两之间（具体的名词已经列出）。

Peter sat between Mary and Jane. 彼得坐在玛丽和简之间。

8. 表示价格、比率、标准、速度的介词

at：表示价值、价格、比率或速度，如：buy sth. at half price以半价购买某物。

for：表示交换，指总价钱，如：pay $3 for a ticket花三美元买一张票。

by：表示度量单位或标准，后接表计量单位的名词，一般是单数，前面需加定冠词the，数词或复数名词前不加。如：We’re paid by the hour. 给我们按小时计酬；increase by 20% 增长20%

9. against

（1）表示“反对；对着；违反；不利于”等。

We are all against his idea. 我们都反对他的想法。

He was married against his will. 他结婚是有违本意的。

There were 20 votes for him and 12 against him. 有20票赞成他，12票反对他。

（2）表示“靠着；顶着；迎着；衬着”等。

He stood with his back against the door. 他背靠门站着。

He hit his head against the window. 他的头撞到了窗户上。

Bright red flags flow in the wind against the blue sky. 鲜艳的红旗在蓝天迎风飘扬。

> 注意 against 是介词，不是动词。

10. beyond

（1）表示位置，意思是“在……的那一边；在……之外；在更远处”。

The new housing estate stretches beyond the playing-fields. 新的住宅区一直延伸到游乐场的那一边。

（2）表示时间，其意为“迟于；超过”。

Some shops keep open beyond midnight. 有些商店营业到半夜以后。

（3）表示范围、水平、限度、能力等，意思是“超出；多于；为……所不能及”。

Your work is beyond all praise. 你的作品叫人称赞不已。

She was really touched beyond words. 她确实感动得无法形容。

（4）表示年龄或数量，意思是“超过”。

He didn’t believe in people living beyond 150. 他不相信人能活到150岁以上。

（5）用在否定和疑问句中，意思是“除……之外”。

I know nothing beyond what he told me. 除了他告诉我的以外，别的

我都不知道。

beyond的常见搭配有：

beyond belief 难以置信

beyond compare 无与伦比，举世无双

beyond control 无法控制，失去控制

beyond description 难以形容，无法描述

beyond doubt 无疑的，毫无疑问的

beyond recognition 认不出来，无法辨认

beyond repair 无法修理

考点2 常见介词固定搭配

1. 介词+名词

（1）at+名词：

at war 正在交战

at work 正在工作

at peace 处于和平或平静状态

at table正在吃饭

at meeting 正在开会

be at school 正在上学

at church 在做礼拜

at breakfast/lunch/supper 正在吃早（午/晚）饭

（2）in+名词：

in progress 正在进展

in fashion 流行

in church 在做礼拜

in danger 处在危险中

in class 在上课

in turn 依次

in action 在运转；在活动中
in hospital 在住院
n tears 在流泪
in office 在执政
in power 掌握权力
in operation 生效，起作用
in need 在贫困中，在困难中
in addition 此外，另外
in time 及时
in trouble 处于困境/困难之中
in one’s opinion 根据某人的看法
（3）on+名词：
on strike 在罢工
on leave 在休假
on the rise 在上涨
on a visit 正在访问
on sale 正在出售
on time 准时
on earth 究竟；在地球上
on the contrary 相反
（4）under+名词：
under consideration 在考虑之中
under construction 在修建中
under discussion 在讨论之中
under treatment 在治疗中
under repair 在修理中
under attack 受到攻击

2. 形容词+介词

（1）与at有关的：

be angry at sth. 对某事感到生气

be good at 擅长

be bad at 不擅长

be surprised at 对……感到吃惊

be clever at 擅长

be terrified at 对……感到害怕

（2）与of 有关的：

be afraid of 害怕……

be sure of 对……有把握

be full of 充满

be tired of 对……感到厌倦

be fond of 喜欢

be proud of 为……感到自豪

be worthy of 应得某事物

be certain of 对……确定的

（3）与with 有关的：

be angry with sb. 对某人感到生气

be strict with sb. 对某人严格要求

be careful with 对……小心翼翼

be busy with 因……而繁忙

be popular with 受到……欢迎

（4）与to 有关的：

be next to 与……相邻

be good to 对……好

be polite to 对……有礼貌

be kind to 友好对待
be cruel to 对……残暴
be rude to 对……无礼
be married to 嫁给，娶
be close to 靠近，挨着
be near to 距离……近
be similar to 与……相似
be known to 为……所知
be due to 是由于
（5）与for 有关的：
be good for 对……有利
be free for 对……免费
be fit for 对……适合的
be unfit for 对……不合适的
be eager for 渴望
be hungry for 渴望
be anxious for 为……感到焦虑，担心
be sorry for 为……感到抱歉
be known for 因……而闻名
（6）与from 有关的：
be far from 远离
be different from 不同于
be free from 使……免于
be safe from 没有……的危险
be absent from 缺席

3. “动词+介词”的固定搭配

（1）动词+at：

glare at 瞪着，怒视
laugh at 嘲笑
stare at 瞪着
arrive at 抵达，到达；达成（协议等）
（2）动词+for：
mistake... for... 将……误作
search for 搜寻
pay for 为……而付费
run for 竞选
blame... for... 因……而责备
charge for 索价，收费
leave... for... 离开……前往
account for 解释，是……的原因；占
（3）动词+from：
die from死于
hear from sb. 收到某人的来信
keep... from... 阻止……做……
prevent... from... 阻止……做……
stop... from... 阻止……做……
protect... from... 保护……免受……
distinguish... from... 使……区别于……
recover from 从……中恢复
separate... from... 将……与……分离
suffer from 遭受，受……之苦
tell... from... 将……与……区分
discourage sb. from... 劝某人不要……
（4）动词+in：
involve... in... 将……牵涉进来

result in 导致，造成
result from 由……造成；因……而产生
succeed in 在……方面成功
lie in 在于
believe in 信任，相信
（5）动词+into：
divide... into... 将……划分为……
change... into... 将……转变为……
（6）动词+of：
accuse sb. of... 指责某人有错、犯（某）罪
approve of 赞成，赞同
consist of 包括，由……构成
complain of 抱怨，诉说
die of 死于
convince... of... 使……相信……
remind... of... 使……记起，想起……
hear of 听说，听说过
think of 想起
rob sb. of sth. 抢劫某人某物
be made up of 由……组成
be composed of 由……组成，构成
warn sb. of sth. 警告某人某事
（7）动词+on/upon：
agree on 就……达成一致
base... on 基于
concentrate on集中精力于；全神贯注于
congratulate... on... 因……而祝贺……
depend on 依赖于；取决于；依靠

count on 指望，依靠
insist on 坚持，坚决要求
feed on 以……为食
live on 以……为生
keep on 持续做……
rely on 依靠，依赖
operate on 在……操作
（8）动词+介词to：
adapt... to... 将……调整为……
agree to 赞同，支持
appeal to 对……有吸引力
apply... to... 将……应用于……
belong to 属于
contribute to 有助于；促成
devote... to... 将……投入于……
entitle... to... 使……具有……的权利或资格
lead to 导致；通向
object to 反对
owe... to... 将……归功于……
react to 对……作出反应，回应
refer to 指，谈及，涉及
relate to 涉及，有关
respond to 响应，对……回应
stick to 坚持；继续做
subject... to 使……顺从；使……遭受
（9）动词+with：
agree with 同意；和……意见一致
associate with 与……相联系

charge... with... 使承担（任务、责任等）

communicate with 与……沟通

compare with 与……相比较

conflict with 与……起冲突

contrast... with... 将……与……对比

cope with 处理，应付

share with 与……分享

do with 应付，处置，处理

deal with 处理；与……打交道

4. with的复合结构

“with+复合结构”又称为“with结构”，其基本形式为：with+名词+现在分词/过去分词/形容词/副词/不定式/介词短语/名词，在句中表状态或用于说明背景情况，常作伴随状语、方式状语、原因状语、条件状语或者定语。

The teacher with a smile on his face is my English teacher.

脸上带着微笑的那位老师是我的英语老师。

With all this work to do, I won’t have time to go out.

有这么多工作要做，我就没有时间出去了。

He often sleeps with the windows open. 他常开着窗睡觉。

He stood before his teacher with his head down. 他低着头站在老师面前。

All the afternoon he worked with the door locked. 整个下午他都锁着门在房里工作。

5. 短语介词

短语介词是指由短语构成的介词。

out of 从……中出来

because of 因为

away from 距离……

on top of 在……之上
ever since 自从……
next to 在……隔壁
according to 根据……
in front of 在……前方
apart from 除……外
because of 因为
instead of 代替
in addition to 除……之外（还）
for fear of 以免
in case of 以免；万一
in fear of 为……提心吊胆
thanks to 由于
according to 根据
in the middle of 在……中间
in front of 在……前面
in charge of 负责
in return for 作为对……的回报
in exchange for 与……交换
as a result of 作为……的结果

二、并列连词

在英语中，连词是一种虚词，分为并列连词和从属连词。这里重点介绍并列连词。

考点1 并列连词

并列连词主要用来表示并列关系、转折关系、选择关系、因果推理关系等。

1. 表转折关系的并列连词

主要有but（但是），yet（可是），while（而，却）等。

Mary likes classical music, but her husband likes rock music.

玛丽喜欢古典音乐，而她的丈夫却喜欢摇滚乐。

I’ ve been away only for three years, yet I can hardly recognize my hometown.

我仅在外三年，可我几乎认不出我的故乡了。

The son was having a good meal at home, while the parents were working in the fields.

儿子在家吃好饭，而父母却在田里辛勤劳作。

> 注意 though和although 不能和but连用。

2. 表示选择关系的并列连词

主要有or（或者），either... or...（要么……要么……），neither... nor...（既不……也不……），otherwise（要不然）等。

Work harder, or you’ll fall behind. 努力点，否则你会落后的。

Either we will find a supply, or we will make the goods.

我们或是寻求供货，或者自己制造。

Neither was the price satisfactory, nor did the colour agree with me.

价格不太令人满意，颜色也不太适合我。

We’ll go early, otherwise we may not get a seat. 我们得早点去，要不然就没有座位了。

> 注意 neither... nor... 连接两个句子，注意用倒装语序。

3. 表并列关系的并列连词

主要有and, not only... but also...（不但……而且……），when（=and just at this time 就在这时）等。

Follow the advice of the doctor, and you’ll be well very soon.

听从医生的建议，你会很快康复的。

Not only will help be given to disabled persons to find jobs, but also medical treatment will be provided for people who need it. 不仅要帮助残疾人求职，而且要对那些需要治疗的人给予治疗。

I was about to go out when someone knocked at the door. 我正要出去，这时有人敲门。

4. 表因果的并列连词

主要有for（因为），so（因此）等。

She found it increasingly difficult to read, for her eyesight was beginning to fail.

她发觉阅读越来越困难了，因为她的视力开始下降了。

I was an only child, so I had no experience of large families.

我是独生子，因此没有在大家庭里生活的经历。

> 注意
>
> ① 并列连词for引导的分句只能放在句尾，前面用逗号隔开，是表示补充说明的微弱理由，只是为前面的内容提供判断的理由。
>
> ② because 不能和so 连用。

考点2 并列关系的连词与主谓一致

表示并列关系的连词有：and, both... and..., not only... but also...和neither... nor...等。它们应连接两个平行对等的句子成分（即同为主语、谓语、宾语、状语等）。

· and 和，并且（连接对等关系的字和字，句子和句子）

· both... and... 既……也……，（两者）都……

· neither... nor... 既不……也不……

· not only... but also... 不但……而且……

· not... but... 不是……而是……

1. 并列连词基本用法

and连接两个成分作主语时，谓语要用复数形式。both... and...构成的词组作主语时，谓语动词用复数。both... and...的否定句表示部分否定。含both的句子变为否定句时，将其改为neither。含both... and...的句子变为否定句时，将both... and...改为neither... nor...。

Both of the boys are handsome. 两个男孩都帅气。

Neither of the boys are handsome. 两个男孩都不帅气。

Both of the boys aren’t handsome. 两个男孩并不是都帅气。

I know both the man and the woman. 我既认识那位男士，也认识那位女士。

I know neither the man nor the woman. 我既不认识那位男士，也不认识那位女士。

2. 并列连词连接主语时的主谓一致问题

当连词或连词短语连接两个成分，而重点强调的是“其中之一”的时候，要采用就近原则。如，or, either... or..., neither... nor..., not only... but also...等连接主语时，要求谓语动词与最邻近主语的人称、数保持一致。

Neither he nor she was at home. 他和她都不在家。

Either my father or my brothers are coming. 要么我父亲来，要么是我兄弟来。

考点3 or的用法

or 作为连词有多种不同的含义和用法。

1. 引出另外一种可能性

or用于引出另一种可能性，表示“或者，还是”。

Are you coming or not? 你来还是不来？

2. 表示“也不”

or用于否定句，提出两种或多种事物时，表示“也不”。

I don’t like tea or coffee. 我不喜欢茶，也不喜欢咖啡。

3. 用于警告

or用于警告，表示“否则”。

Hurry up, or you will be late for school. 快点，否则你上学要迟到了。

4. 表示“或者说”

or用于引出解释性词语，表示“或者说”。

He likes geology, or the science of the earth’s crust.

他喜欢地质学，或者说地壳的科学。

5. 常见固定短语

or so 大约

more or less 或多或少

believe it or not 信不信由你

考点4 祈使句+and/or+陈述句

1. 祈使句+and/or+陈述句

并列连词and和or都可以用于“祈使句+and/or+陈述句”表示结果（即陈述句所表示的内容为前面祈使句内容的结果），此时虽然and和or都可以用，但意思有所不同：and表示“那么”，or表示“否则”。

Wait for a moment and you will find something interesting.

等一下，你会发现有趣之处。

Speak the truth or you will be punished. 说真话，要不然你会受惩罚。

2. “祈使句+and+陈述句”句型的两种变化形式

（1）祈使句+破折号+陈述句。

Try some of this juice—perhaps you’ll like it. 尝尝这种果汁，也许你会喜欢的。

（2）名词词组+and+陈述句，其中名词词组中通常含有more, another, further, earlier等词。

More effort, and you will succeed. 再努力一些，你会成功的。

此外，“祈使句+and/or+陈述句”可以转化为条件状语从句。

Work hard, and you will succeed. → If you work hard, you will succeed.

Hurry up, or you’ll miss the last bus. → If you don’t hurry up, you’ll miss the last bus.

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. Only when you smile to the world will the world smile back you.

2. Though she looked steadily at me, but I saw that she was rather confused.

3. Gradually, I realized the importance of English, so I got up early every morning and listened English recordings.

4. Everything seemed to against me, but I managed to smooth away all the difficulties.

5. I can hardly imagine Mary’s marrying with such a man.

6. From the top of the hill you can see a lot of islands to the coast.

7. We were reading in the reading room while the lights went out.

8. The police searched for the village but they found nothing.

9. I graduated from university last year. Now I work like a teacher in a middle school.

10. The plan that you put forward at the meeting is great value.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

11. To our surprise, the price of oil rose _____ a further $2 a barrel.

12. David was always _____ his best in any danger, but at that moment he froze.

13. What happened to him was _____ his control, so he had to ask the police for help.

14. The equipment for disabled people should be _____ easy reach in public places.

15. The purpose of the article is to draw public attention _____ the problem.

16. Work hard at English in a proper way _____ you will find it not hard to study.

17. Not only the switches but also the old wiring _____（change）up to now.

18. You have no idea how she finished the relay race _____ her foot wounded so much.

19. —Somebody wants you on the telephone. —_____ no one knows I'm here!

20. So she simply welcomed him and reminded him _____ the last time they had met.

III. 单项选择。

21. I'm sorry, Madam. You'd better come tomorrow, because it's _____ the visiting hours.

A. during

B. at

C. beyond

D. before

22. The form cannot be signed by anyone _____ yourself.

A. rather than

B. other than

C. more than

D. better than

23. You can't imagine what difficulty we had _____ home in the snowstorm.

A. walked

B. walk

C. to walk

D. walking

24. Nick, it’s good for you to read some books _____ China before you start your trip there.

A. in

B. for

C. of

D. on

25. She is _____ being pleased about it; she is very angry.

A. free from

B. free of

C. out of

D. far from

26. I’m sorry, _____ I won’t be able to come tonight.

A. for

B. and

C. but

D. then

27. At school, some students are active _____ some are shy, yet they can be good friends with one another.

A. while

B. although

C. so

D. as

28. _____ Tom _____ his parents are willing to go to the restaurant again after having this unpleasant dinner there.

A. Both; and

B. Either; or

C. Neither; nor

D. Not only; but also

29. You have failed two tests. You'd better start working harder, _____ you cannot graduate.

A. and

B. so

C. but

D. or

30. The furniture, with its modern style and bright colors, suits modern houses and their gardens, but looks _____ in the garden of a traditional home.

A. out of question

B. out of order

C. out of sight

D. out of place

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词。

Victor's hobby was collecting stamps. He had stamps __**31**__ many countries, like England, Canada and China. __**32**__ his birthday, can you guess what people gave him? That's right—stamps.

Victor's favourite stamps came from France. He had almost every stamp from 1954 __**33**__ 2014. He only needed one. That was a 1974 special edition. It was very hard to find.

He looked __**34**__ it everywhere. He asked his friends and relatives to help him. __**35**__ nobody could find the stamp. It made Victor very sad.

"Don't worry. Never give up," his father said to him. "Have enough patience, __**36**__ you'll find it one day."

"I hope so," Victor said.

Victor also liked writing. He had a pen friend in France. They wrote __**37**__ each other every month. Victor's pen friend, Phillip, usually used new stamps to send letters. Sometimes, his mother gave him stamps to use. Once Phillip's mother gave him a big, green stamp. It looked old. When Victor received the letter, he was very surprised. __**38**__ the envelope, he looked

carefully __**39**__ the stamp. It was the 1974 special edition stamp. Victor was so happy. He told his sister, his mother and his father.

"You see," his father said. "You did find your stamp. So, it's good to have two things in life."

"What are they?" Victor asked.

"Friends __**40**__ patience." He answered.

Unit 3 形容词和副词

语法精讲

形容词是用来修饰名词，说明事物或人的性质、状态或特征的词。形容词在句中主要充当定语（修饰名词、代词）或表语（表示主语的状态和特征），除此之外，形容词还可用作补语和状语。

副词主要用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或其他结构的词。副词在句中作状语，修饰动词、形容词、副词、介词短语、从句等，也可修饰整个句子。

高考对形容词和副词的考查主要侧重特定语境下形容词、副词的词义辨析以及比较级、最高级的用法。

一、形容词

考点1 形容词的用法

1. 形容词作定语的基本用法

单个形容词作定语，一般放在所修饰的名词之前。形容词短语作定语时，须放在所修饰的名词之后。修饰somebody, someone, something, anybody, anyone, anything, nobody, nothing等复合不定代词的形容词，则必须放在不定代词之后。

He read an interesting storybook this morning. 今天早上他读了一本有趣的故事书。

I know an actor suitable for the part in the play.

我认识一个适合演该剧中这一角色的演员。

I would like something cheaper. 我想要点较为便宜的东西。

2. 多个形容词修饰名词时的顺序

形容词作定语一般位于所修饰的词的前面。多个形容词及其他限定语修饰同一名词时的顺序是固定的，其顺序为：①冠词、指示代词、不定代词、物主代词+②序数词、基数词+③一般性描绘形容词+④大小、长短、形状+⑤年龄、新旧+⑥颜色+⑦国籍、出处+⑧材料+⑨用途、类别+⑩最终修饰的名词或动名词。

I have a big, round, red, wooden, Chinese table.

我有一个大而圆的、红色的、中国产的木桌。

They lived in those four old, grey, wooden houses.

他们住在那四座古老的灰色木屋里。

They found that hungry, tired, sleepy little match girl.

他们找到了那个饥饿、疲劳、困倦的卖火柴的小女孩。

（助记口诀：限定描绘大长高，形状年龄和新老；颜色国籍跟材料，作用类别往后靠。）

3. 同一形容词作前置定语与后置定语的区别

有些形容词作定语可作前置定语也可作后置定语，但含义迥然不同。例如：

	前置含义	后置含义
absent	茫然的；恍惚的	缺席的
present	现在的	出席的
concerned	忧心忡忡的	有关的
responsible	可靠的，可信赖的	应负责的
involved	复杂难懂的	相关的，有关联的

I am an accountant. It’s a responsible position, I suppose, but not very exciting.

我是一名会计。我想那是一个责任重大的职位，但并不是很有意思。

The man responsible for finding the volunteers is Dr. Charles Weber.

负责寻找志愿者的人是查尔斯·韦伯博士。

4. 以a-开头的形容词

某些以a-开头的形容词，如afraid, asleep, alike, alive, awake, alone（孤独的）, ashamed（羞耻的）等只能作表语，不作前置定语。这类形容词可以作后置定语，其含义往往相当于一个定语从句。

Time alone will show who was right.

唯独时间能证明到底谁是正确的。（这里alone相当于which /that is alone）

5. 形容词或形容词短语作状语

形容词或形容词短语作状语，表示方式或伴随，说明谓语动作的方式，它在句子中有时像非限制性分句一样，表示意义上的增补。其逻辑主语是句子的主语。在这种情况下，其位置比较灵活，可位于句首或句末，有时也可位于句中。

Crusoe stared at the footprint, full of fear.（=Crusoe, who was full of fear, stared at the footprint.）克鲁索两眼盯着脚印看，满心恐惧。

Tom, very ill, sent for a doctor.（=As Tom was very ill, he sent for a doctor.）

因为汤姆病得很厉害，所以他派人请医生去了。

Old or young, they all like these cartoon pictures.（=Whether they are old or young, they all like these cartoon pictures.）他们无论年龄大小，都喜欢这些卡通画。

考点2 以-ing、-ed结尾的形容词

由动词变化而来，以-ing结尾的形容词一般修饰物，表示“令人……的”，常作定语；由动词变化而来，以-ed结尾的形容词一般修饰人，表示“（人）……的”，常作表语。由-ed分词转化来的形容词表被动含义，由-ing分词转化来的形容词表主动含义。

an interesting book 有趣的书（=a book which interests readers）

falling leaves 下落的树叶（=leaves that are falling）

a broken heart 破碎的心（=a heart that has been broken）

1. -ing形式的形容词

以后缀-ing结尾的形容词作定语主要用于说明事物，表示事物的性质或特征。有时候也用它们说明人，表示此人具有此性格或特征。

The story is very interesting. 这个故事很有趣。

The man is very interesting. 这个人很有趣。

请再比较并体会以下句子：

He has a frightened look on his face. 他脸上带有惊恐的神情。

He has a frightening look on his face. 他脸上带有吓人的神情。

2. -ed形式的形容词

以后缀-ed结尾的形容词作定语通常用于说明人，不用于说明事物，若修饰事物，则该类事物多为air（神态），appearance（外貌），cry（哭声），face（表情），voice（声音），mood（情绪）等显示某人的情感状况的名词。

He had a pleased smile on his face. 他脸上露出了满意的微笑。

He told me the news in a very excited voice. 他很激动地告诉了我这个消息。

3. 以下是常见的此类形容词

amazing 令人惊异的

amazed 感到惊异的

amusing 令人愉快的

amused 感到开心的

boring 令人厌烦的

bored 感到厌烦的

confusing 令人迷惑的

confused 感到迷惑的

disappointing 令人失望的

disappointed 感到失望的

disturbing 烦人的

disturbed 受到干扰的

encouraging 令人鼓舞的

encouraged 受到鼓励的

entertaining 愉快的，有趣的
entertained 感到愉快的
freezing 冰冻的，严寒的
frozen 冻僵了的
frightening 令人害怕的
frightened 感到害怕的
inspiring 令人鼓舞的
inspired 受到鼓舞的
interesting 令人感兴趣的
interested 感兴趣的
moving 感动人的
moved 受感动的
pleasing 令人高兴的
pleased 感到高兴的
puzzling 令人不解的
puzzled 感到不解的
surprising 令人惊讶的
surprised 感到惊讶的
touching 令人感动的
touched 受感动的
worrying 令人担忧的
worried 感到担忧的

二、副词

考点1 形容词转换为副词

形容词变副词通常是在词尾加ly，但也有一些形容词变副词时需要做一些不规则变化。请记住以下口诀：一般直接加，“元e”去e加，“辅

y”改i加，“le”结尾e改y。

具体说明如下：

（1）一般情况下直接加ly，如：quick-quickly; polite-politely; sad-sadly; recent-recently。

（2）“元e”去e加ly，即少数以元音字母加e结尾的形容词，要去掉e再加-ly。true-truly; due-duly，而绝大多数辅音字母加e结尾的形容词直接加-ly。polite-politely; wide-widely; wise-wisely; nice-nicely。

（3）“辅y”改i加ly，即以辅音字母加y结尾的，且y的读音为/i/，先将y改成i，再加ly，如：happy-happily; heavy-heavily; angry-angrily; busy-busily，但是如果y读音为/ai/，直接加ly。dry-dryly; sly-slyly; shy-shyly。

（4）“le”结尾e改y，即以辅音字母加le结尾时，去e加y。simple-simply; considerable-considerably; terrible-terribly; gentle-gently; possible-possibly; probable-probably。

（5）以-ic结尾的词，加ally，如： economic-economically; basic-basically; scientific-scientifically; automatic-automatically; energetic-energetically。但是也有例外，如： public-publicly。

（6）以-ll结尾时，只须加y，如：full-fully；dull-dully等。

> 注意
>
> 有些以-ly结尾的词是形容词而非副词，例如：manly（有男子气概的），friendly（友好的），motherly（慈母般的），lovely（可爱的），monthly（月度的）。

有些形容词有两种副词形式。一种与形容词同形，另一种在形容词后面加-ly，应注意区别。举例如下：

hard 刻苦地；猛烈地；困难地 如：work hard 努力工作	hardly 几乎不 如：I hardly know her. 我几乎不认识她。
free 免费地 如：travel free on trains 坐火车免费	freely 自由地；不受控制地；无拘无束地 如：travel freely between member states 在成员国内自由出行
late 晚，迟 如：3 hours late 晚了三个小时	lately(=recently) 最近 如：Lately, I've had trouble sleeping. 最近我的睡眠有问题。
high 高高地 如：He jumped high. 他跳得高。	highly 高度地（常和 praise, speak 等连用） 如：think highly of 高度评价
close 接近地，靠近地（表示较为具体的概念） 如：They live quite close. 他们住得很近。	closely 仔细地，密切地（常表示抽象的概念，多用于修饰动词及过去分词） 如：The detective watched him closely, waiting for a reply. 警探紧紧注视着他，等待他回复。
direct 径直地，直接地（表示实际距离，意义具体，常用来修饰动词） 如：The train goes there direct. 这趟列车直达那里。	directly 一般用于抽象，多用来修饰分词或形容词，也可修饰动词。directly 还可有“立刻，马上”的意思。 如：He looked directly at us. 他正视着我们。
deep（用于具体的深度，包括时间和空间，且只修饰动词） 如：They dived deep into the ocean. 他们深深地潜入海中。	deeply（用于抽象的、比喻的意义，可用来修饰动词、形容词、副词和分词） 如：deeply interested, indebted, impressed 极感兴趣的、极为感激的、印象极深的
wide 充分地；完全地 如：wide awake 完全清醒	widely 广泛地 如：widely used 被广泛使用

注意

也有一些词虽以-ly结尾，但是形容词，如：

likely 可能的

costly 花费大的

orderly 整齐的

deadly 致命的

ugly 丑的

lively 活泼的

lonely 寂寞的；孤单的

friendly 友好的

daily 每天的

weekly 每周的

monthly 每月的

yearly 每年的

考点2 连接副词

常见的连接副词有：therefore, besides, otherwise, however, moreover, still, thus, meanwhile, nevertheless等。

以however为例，它与最常见的并列连词but起的作用是一致的，都具有转折的含义，唯一的区别在于前者是副词，后者是连词。however在句中的位置及其前后的标点符号用法为：

（1）Sentence A.+However,+Sentence B.

（2）Sentence A;+however,+Sentence B.

（3）Sentence A. Sentence B, however.

例如：

Many people believe this is right. However, John believes that is wrong.

Many people believe this is right; however, John believes that is wrong.

Many people believe this is right. John believes that is wrong, however.

（三句的含义均为：许多人认为这是对的，然而，约翰却认为这是错误的。）

而并列连词but的用法：

Sentence A,+but+Sentence B.例如：

Many people believe this is right, but John believes that is wrong.

许多人认为这是对的，但是约翰却认为这是错误的。

其他连接副词用法与however相似。

考点3 评注性副词

英语中有一些副词可用作评注性状语，用来修饰整个句子，表示说话人的态度和看问题的角度。作评注性状语的副词有三种：

（1）表示说话人的观点的副词。如：clearly（明显地），certainly（当然），surely（无疑，当然），fortunately（幸运地），

hopefully（但愿，希望），naturally（自然），obviously（显然），possibly（可能），strangely（令人奇怪地），surprisingly（出人意料地），undoubtedly（无疑）等。这类副词常可与其形容词形式相互转换。

Obviously, he’s against our plan.（=It’s obvious that he’s...）

很明显，他反对我们的计划。

Fortunately, I was in time for the interview.（=It’s fortunate that I was...）

幸运的是，我及时赶上了面试。

（2）表示说话人说话的角度的副词。如：briefly（简要地），exactly（准确地），frankly（坦率地），generally（总体上），honestly（诚实地），roughly（大概地），seriously（严肃地）等。这类副词根据语境一般可译为“……地说”。

Exactly, you scored ninety-nine point five. 准确地说，你得了99.5分。

Honestly, I don’t like this book at all. 说老实话，我根本不喜欢这本书。

（3）表示说话人看问题的角度的副词。如：economically（经济上），historically（在历史上），physically（身体上），scientifically（科学上）等。这类副词一般表示“从……角度来说/看”。例如：

Scientifically, the experiment was very important.

从科学的角度来说，这个实验很重要。

尝试在书面表达中恰当使用评注性副词，可以使语言连贯，更有逻辑性。

三、形容词和副词的比较等级以及高频词汇

考点1 形容词、副词的比较级和最高级变化规则

1. 直接加-er，-est的情况

一般单音节词和少数以-er，-ow结尾的双音节词，比较级在后面加-er，最高级在后面加-est。

small → smaller → smallest

short → shorter → shortest

clever → cleverer → cleverest

narrow → narrower → narrowest

2. 加-r，-st的情况

以不发音e结尾的单音节词，比较级在原级后加-r，最高级在原级后加-st。

large → larger → largest

nice → nicer → nicest

able → abler → ablest

3. 双写末尾辅音字母再加-er，-est的情况

在重读闭音节（即：辅音+元音+辅音）中，先双写末尾的辅音字母，比较级加-er，最高级加-est。

big → bigger → biggest

hot → hotter → hottest

fat → fatter → fattest

4. 把y变i后再加-er，-est的情况

以“辅音字母+y”结尾的双音节词，把y改为i，比较级加-er，最高级加-est。

easy → easier → easiest

heavy → heavier → heaviest

happy → happier → happiest

5. 双音节和多音节词的形容词、副词前加more，most

大部分双音节词和多音节词，比较级在前面加more，最高级在前面加most。

beautiful → more beautiful → most beautiful

easily → more easily → most easily

6. 其他特殊情况

另外，有少数形容词、副词的比较级和最高级是不规则的，必须熟记。

good/well → better → best

many/much → more → most

old → older/elder → oldest/eldest

little → less → least

bad/ill/badly → worse → worst

far → further/farther → furthest/farthest

> 注意
>
> ① 一些词本身没有比较级和最高级形式，如：right, wrong, complete等。
>
> ② 一些词的比较级和最高级，可以加-er或-est，也可以加more或most，如：clever, polite等。

考点2 形容词、副词的比较级和最高级的用法

1. 形容词、副词的比较级和最高级的一般用法

（1）形容词、副词比较级的一般用法：“A+谓语动词+形容词/副词比较级+than+B”，意为“A比B更……”。

This tree is taller than that one. 这棵树比那棵树高。

Gary runs faster than Jack. 加里比杰克跑得快。

（2）形容词、副词最高级的一般用法：形容词、副词的最高级形式主要用来表示三者或三者以上人或事物的比较，表示“最……”的意思。句子中有表示范围的词或短语，如of the three, in our class等。

Tom is the smartest of the three boys. 汤姆是这三个男生中最聪明的。

Mary always comes to school earliest in our class. 我们班到校最早的总是玛丽。

注意

① 在含有连词than的比较级中，前后的比较对象必须是同一范畴，即同类事物之间的比较。

② 在比较级前面使用a bit, a little, rather, much, far, by far, many, a lot, lots, a great deal, any, still, even表示程度。

③ very, quite一般只能修饰原级，不能修饰比较级。

2. “比较级+and+比较级”或“more and more+原级”

“比较级+and+比较级”或“more and more+原级”表示“越来越……”。

It becomes warmer and warmer when spring comes. 春天来了，天气越来越暖和了。

Our school is becoming more and more beautiful. 我们的学校变得越来越美丽。

3. “the+比较级……，the+比较级……”

“the+比较级……，the+比较级……”，表示“越……越……”。

The harder you work, the greater progress you will make. 你越用功，进步就越大。

4. 表示倍数的比较级用法

① A is... times the size/height/length/width of B.

② A is... times as big/high/long/wide/large as B.

③ A is... times larger/higher/longer/wider than B.

注意

as... as... 作为习惯用语，有特定含义：

as long as 只要

as soon as 一……就……

as far as 远到……；据……

as well as 和，也

as good as 几乎，实际上

5. 比较级与最高级的转换

有时，比较级和最高级之间通过转换能够表达相同或类似的含义。

Mike is the most intelligent in his class. 迈克是他们班最聪明的学生。

Mike is more intelligent than any other student in his class.

迈克比他们班的其他学生都要聪明。

考点3 高考高频形容词、副词

immediate adj. 立即的，立刻的，马上

clear adj. 清楚的，清晰的

cautious adj. 小心翼翼的

vivid adj. 生动的，逼真的

exactly adv. 确切地，精确地；恰好地，正好地；（用于答语）完全正确；的确这样

fortunately adv. 幸运地

surprisingly adv. 令人惊讶地

hardly adv. 几乎不

instead adv. 代替……；相反

properly adv. 适当地；正确地；恰当地

specially adv. 专门，特地；尤其

reliable adj. 可靠的，可信赖的

simply adv. 简单地；仅仅；简直

namely adv. 即，也就是

not nearly=far from=nowhere near 远非，远远不，一点也不

patient adj. 耐心的 n. 病人

plain adj. 简单的；朴素的

familiar adj. 熟悉的

lucky adj. 幸运的
amazing adj. 令人惊异的；了不起的
accidentally adv. 偶然地；意外地silent adj. 沉默的
calm adj. 平静的，冷静的
secret adj. 秘密的
otherwise adv. 否则
meanwhile adv. 期间，同时
besides adv. 除……以外还有
efficient adj. 高效的，有效的
flexible adj. 灵活的
complex adj. 复杂的
smooth adj. 平稳的；光滑的；顺利的
regularly adv. 定期地，有规律地
sensitive adj. 敏感的；有感知力的，能理解的
honest adj. 诚实的
confident adj. 自信的
shy adj. 害羞的，羞涩的
thoughtful adj. 深思的，沉思的；周到的，体贴的
lighthearted adj. 无忧无虑的
optimistic adj. 乐观的
nevertheless adv. 然而
private adj. 私人的
personal adj. 个人的
unique adj. 唯一的，独一无二的；独特的
favorable adj. 赞同的，有利的
precious adj. 宝贵的，珍贵的
essential adj. 必要的，重要的
worthwhile adj. 值得的

physical adj. 身体的；物理的；物质的
sudden adj. 突然的
merely=only adv. 仅仅，只
rarely adv. 罕见地
splendidly adv. 极好地；壮观地
increasingly adv. 越来越多地
naturally adv. 自然地
accurate adj. 精确的，准确的
ridiculous adj. 可笑的，荒谬的
urgent adj. 紧急的，急迫的
shallow adj. 浅的；肤浅的
frequently adv. 经常地，频繁地
especially=particularly adv. 特别地，尤其地
obviously=apparently adv. 显而易见地
necessarily adv. 必要地，必须地；必然地
generally adv. 一般地，通常地
eventually adv. 最终，最后
adoptable adv.可采用的；可收养的
acceptable adj. 可以接受的
available adj. 可利用的，可使用的；可得到的
accessible adj. 可接近的；可得到的；可进入的
relatively adv. 相对地，比较地
approximately adv. 大约
absolutely adv. 绝对地
punctual adj. 守时的
gentle adj. 温柔的
neatly adv. 整洁地
entirely adv. 完全地

highly adv. 高度地；非常
strongly adv. 强烈地，坚固地
extremely adv. 极端地；非常
reasonably adv. 合乎情理地
eagerly adv. 热切地；渴望地
badly adv. 很，非常
slightly adv. 稍微，轻微地
equally adv. 平等地
lately adv. 最近
enthusiastic adj. 热情的；热烈的；热心的
energetic adj. 精力充沛的，有活力的
talkative adj. 喜欢说话的；多嘴的；健谈的
impressive adj. 印象深刻的
traditional adj. 传统的
practical adj. 实践的，实际的
similar adj. 类似的，相似的
convenient adj. 方便的，便利的
sooner or later 迟早，早晚
more or less 或多或少，差不多，几乎
once in a while 偶尔，时不时地
now and then 偶尔，有时
willingly adv. 情愿地
unexpectedly adv. 出乎意料地
unwillingly adv. 不情愿地
unforgettable adj. 难忘的
doubtful adj. 可疑的；令人生疑的；疑心的；不能确定的
hardly=scarcely adv. 几乎不
respectable adj. 值得尊敬的

respectful adj. 恭敬的，有礼貌的

distinguished adj. 著名的；卓著的；高贵的

complicated adj. 难懂的，复杂的

awkward=clumsy adj. 笨拙的

previous adj. 以前的

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. We have made greatly progress with the help of the teacher.

2. Now I’m improving my English great. And I’m getting more and more interested in learning it.

3. While waiting for the ambulance, I took off my coat to keep the old man warmly.

4. Talking with your parent more frequent, as far as I’m concerned, is good for you.

5. Your sister doesn’t look good today. Maybe she is ill.

6. The population in and around San Francisco is now ten times more than it was in 1906.

7. When they came into the room, they checked the rooms as carefully as possibly.

8. The children were exciting at the news that their parents would return from abroad.

9. The tomatoes I picked are much more redder than yours.

10. He pushed the stick deeply into the mud.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

11. There was an accident at the corner. _____（lucky）, the girl wasn’t _____（bad）hurt.

12. The Yellow River is the second _____（long）river in our country.

13. He knows nothing about the matter, so he can't tell us _____ important, I think.

14. Most of the students think a lion is much _____（dangerous）than a bear and it is the _____（dangerous）animal in the world.

15. All the students in the classroom were _____（deep）touched by his story.

16. They stayed in the snow for several days, cold and _____（tire）.

17. My uncle's house in the downtown area is much smaller than ours, but it is twice _____ expensive.

18. Not all the customers are _____（interest）in financial details.

19. _____（fortunate）, I was in time for the interview.

20. These _____ children looked at the _____ tsunami with _____ eyes.（frighten）

Ⅲ. 单项选择。

21. The ukulele is a _____ instrument, which resembles a guitar.

A. Hawaiian musical small

B. small musical Hawaiian

C. Hawaiian small musical

D. small Hawaiian musical

22. —The film is, I have to say, not a bit interesting.

—But I think it's _____ than the films I have ever seen.

A. far more interesting

B. much less interesting

C. no more interesting

D. any less interesting

23. After the long journey, the Smiths returned home, _____.

A. safe but tired

B. safely but tired

C. safe and tiring

D. safely and tiring

24. I don’t care if a hunting dog smells _____, but I really don’t want him to smell _____.

A. well; well

B. bad; bad

C. well; badly

D. badly; bad

25. When you study the local map, you’ll find this town is _____.

A. twice the size of that one

B. twice as a large town as that

C. twice as larger as that one

D. twice as larger a town as that

26. —Did you enjoy yourself at the party?

—Yes. I’ve never been to _____ one before.

A. a more excited

B. the most excited

C. a more exciting

D. the most exciting

27. Let’s make it at seven o’clock on Tuesday morning at my office if _____.

A. you’re convenient

B. it is convenient for you

C. you feel convenient

D. it is convenient with you

28. _____, I managed to get through the game and the pain was worth it in the end.

A. Hopefully

B. Normally

C. Thankfully

D. Conveniently

29. Playing on a frozen sports field sounds like a lot of fun. Isn't it rather risky, _____?

A. though

B. also

C. either

D. too

30. Studies show that people are more _____ to suffer from back problems if they always sit before computer screens for long hours.

A. likely

B. possible

C. probable

D. sure

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

As the labor market becomes more __**31**__ （attract）, more companies are sending their employees to school. Fiat Chrysler Automobiles is the latest company __**32**__ （use）tuition assistance for employees. And while the impact of such programs has yet to be __**33**__ （full）assessed, many see it as a positive—although gradual—movement.

"For workers, it gives them a __**34**__ （good）opportunity for development," says Colleen Flaherty Manchester, a professor. Largely driving the trend are Millennials, who happen to be the fastest-growing people in the US workforce today and to whom the idea of tuition support from employers is __**35**__ （especial）appealing.

Employers are __**36**__ （absolute）adapting to Millennials in the workplace. They recognize that they need __**37**__ （much）experience, more knowledge, more mentoring to be __**38**__ （success）. And they're asking for it.

Of more than 140,000 Starbucks employees, only about 4,000 have

signed up for the company's College Achievement Plan. What the long-term effects such programs might have for companies' retention and turnover rates remain unclear. __**39**__ , the pluses（优点，益处）of these programs are __**40**__（important）than the minuses（不利之处）. We're going to see a lot more of this in the future.

Unit 4 动词的时态和语态

语法精讲

动词的时态和语态历来是高考题中的考查重点。考生应着重掌握：一般过去时和现在完成时的区别；一般现在时（过去时）与现在（过去）进行时的区别；及物动词的被动语态等。

考点1 动词和动词短语

1. 动词的分类

根据意义和句法作用，英语动词可分为四类：

实义动词	① 及物动词（带宾语），如：study, develop ② 不及物动词（不带宾语），如：work, swim, go, come ③ 状态动词（相对静止），如：contain, exist, own, prefer, belong ④ 动作动词：延续性（如：work, stay）和非延续性（如：marry, go, come）
系动词	① 表示人或事物的特征和状态，如：be, feel, look, seem, taste, appear, sound ② 表示状态的变化，如：turn, go, become, get, fall, grow ③ 表示某种状态的延续或持续，如：remain, keep, stay
助动词	与动词原形或分词构成复合谓语，常见的助动词有：be (am, is, are), do (does, did); have (has); will, would, shall 等。
情态动词	can (could), may (might), must, shall (should) 等

2. 动词短语

动词短语（Phrasal Verbs）是动词+介词/副词或者两者都有。有的相当于及物动词，有的相当于不及物动词。有些相当于及物动词的动词短语是一个整体，变被动语态不可丢掉后面的介词或副词。

My sister will be taken care of by Grandma. 我妹妹将会由奶奶照顾。

Such a thing has never been heard of before. 这样的事以前闻所未闻。

常见动词搭配：

动词 + 介词 / 副词	argue, bring, care, concern, come, complain, hear, set, worry 等	+ about
	blow, break, carry, clear, die, give, pass, put, throw, wear, turn 等	+ away
	bring, give, hold, keep, look, put, set, take 等	+ back
	wait, long, care, search, call, change, apply, seek, stand, look, charge, take, apologize, answer, prepare, search, struggle 等	+ for

动词 + 介词 / 副词	burn, take, cut, pass, calm, settle, tear, break, turn, slow, put, bring 等	+ down
	stare, glance, knock, smile, aim, look, glare, laugh, point, strike, shoot, call 等	+ at
	date, escape, graduate, hear, hear, prevent, protect, result, separate, suffer, differ 等	+ from
	consist, approve, complain, cure, demand, inform 等	+ of
	set, show, get, see, put, cut, switch, take, give 等	+ off
	agree, base, operate, depend, insist, put, feed, rely, call, try, pass 等	+ on
	break, bring, carry, come, give, pick, run, send, try, wear, burst, figure, make, find, put, hand, let, turn, leave, work, look, go 等	+ out
	believe, break, bring, call, check, drop, engage, fail, give, hand, join, result 等	+ in
	change, break, burst, divide, turn, look, translate 等	+ into
	get, go, hand, look, take, turn, watch, roll 等	+ over
	add, agree, belong, come, devote, lead, refer, stick, turn, object, supply, compare 等	+ to
	grow, build, put, bring, stay, end speed, send, give, set, take, eat, tear, make, come, throw, look, hold, ring 等	+ up
	get, go, see, pull, look 等	+ through
	deal, agree, combine, do, compare, equip, provide, begin, supply, compete, connect 等	+ with
三个词（含）以上的动词短语	add up to 总计 look down on 轻视 keep up with 赶上 get on/along with 和……相处 get out of 逃避，避免 take notice of 注意 take a photo of 拍……照片 get/be used to 习惯于 come into being 出现 take an interest in 对……感兴趣 take charge of 负责 take part in 参加 break away from 摆脱 catch up with 赶上 go on with 继续 take hold of 握住 pay attention to 注意 pay a visit to 访问 make use of 利用 get rid of 摆脱 take care of 照看 make room for 给……让地方 play a part in 起作用，扮演……的角色	keep away from 避开，别靠近 put up with 忍受 make up for 弥补 get close to 接近 set fire to 放火烧 do well in 在……方面做得好 make fun of 开玩笑，取笑 keep in touch with 与……保持联系 take pride in 为……而自豪 make a fool of 愚弄 make friends with 同……交朋友 catch sight of 看见 look up to 仰望，尊敬 run out of 用完 look forward to 盼望 get down to 认真开始 set an example to 为……树立榜样 take the place of 取代 get into the habit of 养成……的习惯 keep an eye on 提防 help oneself to 随便吃或用 take advantage of 利用 lose sight of 看不见

上表可以归纳为高频动词（break, bring, call, carry, come, cut, die,

give, go, get, hold, look, make, pick, put, set, take, turn, set等）和不同的介词与副词构成的短语。需要特别注意同一个短语在不同语境下的不同含义以及相近短语的辨析。

3. 动词辨析

形近的动词之间的辨析。

lie（躺）；lay（放置；产卵）

hanged（绞死）；hung（悬挂）

sit（坐下）；seat（使就坐）

rise（上升，上涨，升起）；raise（提高，提升）

意近的动词之间的辨析。

borrow（借，借入）；lend（借给，借出）

speak（说，讲）；say（说）；talk（谈论）

hope（希望）；wish（祝愿，希望）

动词与其他词性的形近或意近的词的辨析。如：advise与advice; cost与worth; pass与past等。

意义不同，但容易混淆的动词的辨析。如：explain与say; discover, invent与uncover; find与find out等。

某些常用动词的习惯用法的辨析。如：ask, give, call, make, find, get, keep, want, see, hear等。

考点2 动词的时态

高中阶段需要掌握以下10种时态。

1. 一般现在时

可以用来表示客观规律和真理，还可以表示目前状态、能力、性格和个性，还能表示经常或习惯性的动作，常与often, always, from time to time等时间状语搭配使用。

特殊用法

① 在由when, until, once, as soon as, so long as等引导的时间状语从句或条件状语从句中，常用一般现在时态代替一般将来时态，主句用一般

将来时态或用祈使句或含有can, may, must等情态动词，俗称“主将从现”。

I’ ll call you as soon as I get off the plane. 我一下飞机就给你打电话。

② 在“the+比较级..., the+比较级...（越……越……）”句型中，若主句是一般将来时，则从句通常用一般现在时。

The harder you study, the better results you will get. 你学习越努力，成绩就越好。

③ 表示客观真理，即使出现在过去的语境中，仍用一般现在时。

I learned that the earth goes around the sun when I was in primary school.

当我上小学的时候，我知道了地球绕着太阳转。

④ 在make sure（弄清楚），make certain（弄清楚），take care（注意，当心），be careful（注意，当心），mind（注意），watch（注意）等后的that从句中通常也用一般现在时表将来。

Take care that it does not occur again. 注意别再发生这样的事。

Make sure you come back soon. 你要保证快点回来。

⑤ come, go等动词用一般现在时表示按规定、计划或时间表将要发生的事。

According to the timetable, the train starts at 10 o’clock in the morning.

按照时刻表，火车将在早上10点出发。

这类用法限于表示“移动”的动词：come（来），go（去），leave（离开），start（出发），begin（开始），arrive（到达），depart（离开），stay（逗留）等。

⑥ 有些表示状态和感觉的动词表示现在发生的具体行为时，只用一般现在时，而不用进行时态。

The plan sounds great. 这个计划听起来很棒。

⑦ 用在倒装句中，表示动作正在进行。

There goes the bell.=The bell is ringing. 铃响了。

2. 一般过去时

表示在过去某个特定时间发生，也可以表示过去习惯性、经常性的

动作。一般过去时不强调动作对现在的影响，只说明过去的事情。常与表示过去时间的yesterday, just now, a moment ago, in May, last night/year/week, once upon a time, the other day, in the past等连用。

特殊用法

① 在wish, would rather的宾语从句中和在as if引导的状语从句中，以及在It is time that...的从句中，谓语动词用一般过去时表示对现实状况的虚拟或不大可能实现的愿望。

I wish that I could fly like a bird. 我希望我能像鸟儿一样飞翔。

I' d rather you went tomorrow. 我宁愿你明天去。

It's high time that you started working. 是你开始工作的时候了。

② used to do sth. 意为"过去常常做某事"，表示过去习惯性的动作或状态，但如今已不存在。

I used to work in a small town, but now I am working in Beijing.

我过去在一个小镇上班，但是我现在在北京工作。

③ 描述过去时间内连续发生的几个动作。

He opened his eyes, put on his clothes quickly and jumped from the bed.

他睁开眼，迅速穿上衣服，然后从床上跳了下来。

④ 表示说话人始料未及的事情，用一般过去时。表示"刚刚"，暗示现在已经不再这样。

—Oh, it's you! I didn't recognize you. 哦，是你啊！我都没有认出来。

—I've just had my hair cut, and I'm wearing new glasses.

我刚刚剪了发，而且戴了副新眼镜。

⑤ 在含有hardly/scarcely... when..., no sooner... than...结构的句子中，主句用过去完成时，从句用一般过去时。（注意：主句一般需要倒装）

No sooner had I heard the knock than I opened the door.

当听到敲门声，我马上就开门了。

⑥ 有些动词如expect, hope, intend, plan, want等采用一般过去时，后接不定式的完成时可表示过去未曾实现的意图、打算或希望。

I hoped to have been invited to his wedding party. 我本希望他邀请我

参加他的婚礼。

3. 一般将来时

表示在将来的某个时候将要发生的动作或存在的状态，常与tomorrow, next week, from now on（从现在开始）, in the future（将来）, someday（未来的某一天）等表示将来某个时间的表达连用。

特殊用法

① 用“be going to+动词原形”可以表示打算和预测。

The play is going to be produced next month. 这部戏预计下个月开拍。

② 用“be to+动词原形”表示按计划或安排即将要发生的动作，有时也表示命令、禁止或可能性。如：

We are to discuss the report next Saturday. 我们打算下周六讨论这个报告。

③ 用“be about to+动词原形”表示即将发生的事。

Look! The race is about to start. 瞧，赛车就要开始了。

> 注意 该句型不能与tomorrow, next week等明确表示将来时的时间状语连用。

④ 用“be due to+动词原形”表示按计划或时间表将要发生某事。

The strike is due to begin on Tuesday. 罢工预定于星期二开始。

⑤ 用一般现在时表将来。

A. come, go, arrive, leave, start, begin, return等词可以用一般现在时表将来，表示在时间上已确定或安排好的事情。

The train leaves at 7 o’clock. 火车七点钟开。

B. 用在时间或条件状语从句中表示将来。

When Bill comes, ask him to wait for me. 比尔来了后，让他等我。

⑥ 用现在进行时（即be+现在分词）表示按计划或安排要发生的事。

We’re having a party next week. 我们下星期将开一个晚会。

I’m leaving tomorrow. 我打算明天动身。

4. 现在进行时

表示说话时正在进行的动作或者是现阶段正在进行着的动作。现阶段正在进行着的动作，不一定指说话时正在进行着的动作。前者常与now连用，有时和祈使句，如look, listen等连用。后者常和at present（目前），this week（本周），these days（这几天）等时间状语连用。

特殊用法

① 现在进行时态句中含有always, all the time, forever, constantly 等词或短语时，可以表示说话人赞赏或厌恶等感情。

You are always changing your mind. 你总是改变主意。（责备的语气）

② 某些动词，如come, go, leave, arrive, start 等可用现在进行时表示将来。

It’s getting warmer and warmer. 天气将越来越暖和了。

③ 以here, there 等词开头的句子，描述正在发生的动作，谓语动词用一般现在时表示现在进行时。

Here comes the bus.=The bus is coming. 车来了。

④ 不可用于进行时的动词：

A. 表示事实状态的动词，如have（表示“拥有”时）, belong, possess, cost, owe, exist, include, contain, matter, weigh, measure, continue等。

B. 表示心理状态的动词，如know, realize, think, see, believe, suppose, imagine, agree, recognize, remember, want, need, forget, prefer, mean, understand, love, hate等。

C. 非延续性动词，如accept, receive, complete, finish, give, allow, decide, refuse等。

D. 系动词，如seem, remain, lie, see, hear, smell, feel, taste, get, become, turn等。

5. 过去进行时

表示在过去某一时刻或某一段时间内进行或发生的动作，常与表示过去的时间状语连用，如last night, last Saturday等，或者与when, while, as引导的过去时间状语从句连用。

We were watching TV from seven to nine last night.

昨天晚上七点到九点我们在看电视。

We were having supper when the phone rang. 我们正在吃晚饭时，电话铃响了。

特殊用法

① 在复合句中，如果主要动作和背景动作都是延续的或同时发生的，那么主从句的动词都可用过去进行时。

While he was waiting for the bus, he was reading a newspaper.

他边等车边看报。（两个动作都是延续的）

He was cleaning his car while I was cooking.

他擦车时我在做饭。（两个动作同时进行）

② 与always, forever, constantly, continually, frequently等副词连用，表示过去经常发生的行为，往往带有说话者的感情色彩。

③ 不能用于过去进行时的动词主要有：have（表示“拥有”时）, agree, believe, belong, care, forget, hate, hear, know, like, love, mean, mind, notice, own, remember, seem, suppose, understand, want, wish等。

6. 现在完成时

表示过去某时刻发生的动作对现在造成的影响或结果，或者从过去某一时刻开始，一直延续到现在的动作或状态。前者常与already, yet, just, ever, never... before, this morning, now, today, so far, in the last/past+时间段, over+时间段, recently, by+现在时间等连用；后者常与for引导的一段时间或since引导的时间点或过去时间状语从句连用。

应注意现在完成时与一般过去时的区别：

现在完成时强调过去的事情对现在的影响；一般过去时常与具体的时间状语连用，表示过去某时发生的动作或单纯叙述过去的事情，强调动作。试比较：

I have seen this film.

这部电影我看过了。（强调对现在的影响，电影的内容已经知道了）

I saw this film yesterday. 我昨天看了这部电影。（强调看的动作发生过了）

特殊用法

① 用于现在完成时的句型：

A. It is the first/second time... that... 结构中的从句部分，用现在完成时。

It is the first time that I have visited the city. 这是我第一次参观这座城市。

B. This is the... that... 结构，that从句要用现在完成时。

This is the first time that I've heard him sing. 这是我第一次听他唱歌。

② 非延续性动词表示行为的结果，不能与表示时间段的状语连用。即非延续性动词在现在完成时的肯定句中不能和for, since引导的时间状语连用，也不能用在how long引导的特殊疑问句中。在以when提问的特殊疑问中不能用现在完成时。另外，ago不能用于现在完成时的句子中，因为它表示从现在算起的以前某个时间，属于表示具体过去时间的状语。可以用before来表示"以前"这一含义。

注意

非延续性动词的否定形式可以与表示延续时间的状语连用。即动作不发生的状态是可以持续的。

（错）I have seen him for a month.

（对）I haven't seen him for almost a month. 我几乎有一个月没有见到他了。

③ 大部分非延续性动词可以根据实际情况改为相应的延续性动词来表达相同或相近的意思，举例如下：

buy→have

begin→be on

put on→wear

borrow/lend→keep

leave→be away（from）

die→be dead

get to know→know

come→be/live/stay

join→be in/be a member of

finish→be over

get up/wake up→be up

catch a cold→have a cold

go to school→be at school

get/ receive（接收）→have

hear from→have a letter from

go/come/arrive /get（到达）/reach→be（in/at）

get/fall asleep/go to sleep→sleep, be asleep

7. 过去完成时

表示在过去的某个时间或动作以前已经发生的动作或已经存在的状态，即“过去的过去”，必须有一个具体的过去时间或动作来支撑，强调对比。常用时间状语有already, before, ever, just, never, still, yet等，也可表示过去某个时间或动作之前所发生的动作一直持续到过去某个时间，常接时间状语“since+时间点”或“for+时间段”。

特殊用法

① 过去完成时还经常用于主句为过去时的宾语从句中。

He said he had been a soldier. 他说他当过兵。

They said they had seen the film. 他们说这部电影他们看过。

② “It/This/That was+the+序数词+time+that...”句式中，that后面的从句用过去完成时。

It was the third time that he had made the same mistake. 这是他第三次犯同样的错误。

③ 动词expect, hope, suppose, think, want等的过去完成时可用来表示未实现的计划、打算或希望。

He had wanted to buy a house in the US. 他本想在美国买栋房子。

④ 在hardly/scarcely... when..., no sooner... than... 两个结构中的主句通常要用过去完成时。

Hardly had I told her the news when she began to cry. 我一告诉她这消息，她就哭了。

No sooner had he fallen asleep than he lay down on the bed. 他一躺到床上就睡着了。

⑤ 在条件状语从句以及wish或I'd rather后的宾语从句中，常用过去完成时表示与过去事实相反的假设、推断等（虚拟语气）。

I would rather you had not told her the truth. 我宁愿你没有告诉她真相。

⑥ 下列情况一般不用过去完成时态：

A. 当主句跟由before, after, as soon as所引导的时间从句的动作连接很紧密时，从句可用一般过去时。

He went there after he read the letter. 他看了那封信后就去那里了。

B. 表示过去某个时间以前所连续发生的两个或两个以上的动作时，一般用and, then, but，按照动作的先后顺序连接，此时通常用一般过去时而不用过去完成时。

He said he went to the shop and bought some food. 他说他去商店买了一些食品。

C. 叙述历史事实，可不用过去完成时，而只用一般过去时。

Our teacher told us that Columbus discovered America in 1492.

老师告诉过我们，哥伦布在1492年发现了美洲。

8. 过去将来时

表示从过去某个时间看来即将发生的动作或存在的状态。多在宾语从句中作间接引语，常与at six the next morning/afternoon/night, the next day/Friday/week/month, the following day/week/month /year, two days/three weeks/four years later等类似表达连用。

特殊用法

① was/were going to+动词原形；was/were to+动词原形；was/were about to+动词原形等结构，都可表达一种即将实现的意图或打算。

They said that they were going to be sent to meet her at the railway station.

他们说他们将被派去火车站接她。

② 条件状语从句和时间状语从句中须用一般过去时代替过去将来时。

I didn't know when she came, but when she came I would let you know.

我不知道她什么时候会来，但是她来的时候我会让你知道。

③ would do表示过去的习惯，意为"总是做，总会做，常常做"。此处would为情态动词。

The little girl lived in a simple and poor house on a hill. Usually she would come to play in the small graden. 这个小姑娘住在山上一间简单破旧的房子里。通常她会来这个小花园里玩耍。

9. 现在完成进行时

表示从过去某个时刻开始一直持续到现在的动作，并且可能还将持续下去或者在说话时刻之前到现在正在进行的动作。基本结构：助动词have/has+been+doing。常与"for+时间段"或"since+时间点（也可以是从句）"这类时间状语连用。

注意

有些现在完成进行时的句子等同于现在完成时的句子，但大多数现在完成进行时的句子不等同于现在完成时的句子。

They have been living in this city for ten years.=They have lived

in this city for ten years. 他们在这个城市已经住了10年了。

I have been writing a book. 我一直在写一本书。（动作还将继续下去）

I have written a book. 我已经写了一本书。（动作已经完成）

特殊用法

① 表示“重复”。即表示在一段持续的时间内动作的多次重复，而这个重复的动作在说话时并不一定在进行。

Jim has been phoning Jenny every night for the past week.

一星期以来吉姆每天晚上给詹妮打电话。

② 表示状态的动词不能用于现在完成进行时，如know（了解），love（爱），like（喜欢），hate（讨厌）等。

I have known him for years. 我已经认识他好多年了。

I have been knowing for years.（×）

10. 将来进行时

表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作或预测将来会发生的事情。基本结构：助动词shall/will+be+doing。将来进行时常与soon, this evening, on Sunday, by this time, tomorrow, in two days, tomorrow evening等连用。

Don’t phone me between 5 and 6. We’ll be having dinner then.

五点至六点之间不要给我打电话，那时我们在吃饭。

When he comes to my house tomorrow, I will be writing the report.

明天他来我家时，我将在写报告。

特殊用法

① 将来进行时常可置于一般将来时之后表示稍靠后的安排。

My duties will end in July and I will be returning to Arizona in the US.

我的工作将于七月结束，之后我将回到美国亚利桑那州。

② 将来进行时表原因、结果、可能和委婉语气等。

Please come tomorrow afternoon. Tomorrow morning I'll be having a meeting.

请你明天下午来吧。明天上午我有一个会。（表示原因）

He will be telling you about it tonight. 他今晚会告诉你这件事。（表示可能）

Will you be needing anything else? 你还需要什么吗？（表示委婉）

考点3 动词的语态

动词的语态是动词的一种形式，表示主语和谓语之间语法或语义的关系。英语的语态有两种：主动语态和被动语态。

1. 各种时态的被动语态

被动语态由“be+过去分词”构成，be动词随时态的变化而变化。

时态	被动语态构成形式
一般现在时	am/is/are done
一般过去时	was/were done
现在进行时	am/is/are being done
过去进行时	was/were being done
现在完成时	have/has been done
过去完成时	had been done
一般将来时	will/shall be done
过去将来时	would/should be done

注意 “get+过去分词”也可以表示被动，此结构比较口语化。

2. 特殊结构形式

（1）带情态动词的被动结构。其形式为：情态动词+be+过去分词。

（2）有些动词可以有两个宾语，在用于被动结构时，可以把主动结构中的一个宾语变为主语，另一宾语仍然保留在谓语后面。通常变为

主语的是间接宾语。

His mother gave him a present for his birthday.（主动语态）→

He was given a present by his mother for his birthday.（被动语态）

A present was given to him by his mother for his birthday.（被动语态）

（3）当“动词+宾语+宾语补足语”结构变为被动语态时，将宾语变为被动结构中的主语，其余不变。

Someone caught the boy smoking a cigarette.（主动语态）→

The boy was caught smoking a cigarette.（被动语态）

（4）使役动词have, make, let以及感官动词see, watch, notice, hear, feel, observe等后面的不定式作宾语补足语时，在主动结构中不定式to要省略，但变为被动结构时，要加to。

Someone saw a stranger walk into the building.（主动语态）→

A stranger was seen to walk into the building.（被动语态）

（5）一些表示“据说”或“相信”的动词，如believe, consider, expect, report, say, suppose, think等，可以用于句型“It+be+过去分词+that从句”或“主语+be+过去分词+to do sth.”。常见的具体用法有：

It is said that... 据说……

It is reported that... 据报道……

It is believed that... 人们相信……

It is hoped that... 人们希望……

It is well known that... 众所周知……

It is thought that... 人们认为……

It is suggested that... 据建议……

（6）make sb. heard/understood意为“使别人能听见/理解自己”。

Explain it clearly and make yourself understood. 解释清楚些，让别人能够理解你的话。

（7）在某些“形容词+不定式”作表语或宾语补足语的结构中，句子的主语或宾语又是动词不定式的逻辑宾语时，常用不定式的主动形式表达被动意义。这些形容词有nice, easy, fit, hard, difficult, important,

impossible, pleasant, interesting等。

This problem is difficult to work out. 这是一个难以解决的问题。

3. 不用被动语态的几种情况

（1）系动词和不及物动词或不及物动词词组，如appear, be, become, fall, feel, get, grow, keep, look, remain, seem, smell, sound, stay, taste, turn, disappear, happen, last, lie, sit, spread, stand, break out, come true, fall asleep, keep silence, lose heart, take place等没有被动语态。

（2）表示状态和归属的谓语动词，如：last, hold, benefit, contain, equal, fit, join, mean, last, look like, consist, have, own, belong to等。

（3）宾语是反身代词或相互代词时谓语动词用主动语态，不能用于被动语态。

4. 谓语动词主动形式表示被动的几种情况

（1）有些动词可以用其主动形式表示被动意义，特别是当主语是物时，如sell, write, wash, open, lock等。

The book sells well. 这本书销路好。

This knife cuts easily. 这刀子很好用。

（2）表示“发生，进行”的不及物动词和短语，如：happen, last, take place, break out, come out, come about, come true, add up to, run out, give out, turn out等以主动形式表示被动意义。

His whole school education added up to no more than three years. 他在学校接受的教育全部加起来还不足三年。

（3）表示感受、感官的系动词，如feel, sound, taste, book, feel等，在主系表结构中常以主动形式表示被动意义。

This book published last month sells well. 上个月出版的那本书卖得不错。

（4）在need, require, want, be worth, deserve后的动名词必须用主动形式。

The door needs repairing.=The door needs to be repaired. 门该修了。

This book is worth reading. 这本书值得一读。

5. 谓语动词被动形式表示主动

（1）be seated 坐着。如：He is seated on a bench.（He seats himself on a bench.）坐在凳子上。

（2）be hidden 躲藏。如：He was hidden behind the door.（He hid himself behind the door.）他藏在门后。

（3）be lost 迷路。如：Unsaved changes will be lost. 未保存的更改将丢失。

（4）be drunk 喝醉。如：He must be drunk, or else he is mad. 他肯定是醉了，不然就是疯了。

（5）be dressed 穿着。如：The girl was dressed in a red short skirt. 那位女孩穿着一条红色的短裙。

注意

be determined, be pleased, be graduated（from）, be finished, be prepared（for）, be occupied（in）, get married等都属于被动形式表示主动意义的情况。

He is graduated from a famous university. 他毕业于一所著名的大学。

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. It is said that the weather will last hot for another three or four days.

2. The reporter said that the UFO travelled east to west when he saw it.

3. You’ll get to like the novel after you read it for several times.

4. All that can be done has done.

5. Hand in your papers when you will finish the test.

6. Last Sunday I went to town, buying some apples and visited my grandma.

7. An accident was happened to him when he was on the way to the cinema.

8. I have caught a bad cold for a week and I can’t get rid of it.

9. If you know the rules of word formation, you will understand a large number of English words

when you first come about them.

10. I haven’t seen her since two months.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

11. With more forests being destroyed, huge quantities of good earth _____（wash）away each year.

12. —Do you like the material?

—Yes, it _____（feel）very soft.

13. —Why did you leave that position?

—I _____（offer）a better position at IBM.

14. —The window is dirty.

—I know. It _____（not clean）for weeks.

15. Until then, his family _____（not hear）from him for six months.

16. No sooner had he seen me _____ he began to ask me where I had been these days..

17. —Hi, let’s go skating.

—Sorry, I’m busy right now. I _____（fill）in an application form for a new job.

18. —What time is it?

—I have no idea. But just a minute, I _____（check）it for you.

19. Unless extra money _____（find）, the theatre will close.

20. —Haven’t seen you for ages! Where have you been?

—I went to Ningxia and _____（stay）there for one year, teaching as a volunteer.

21. —Tony, why are your eyes red?

—I _____（cut）up peppers for the last five minutes.

22. They made up their mind that they _____（buy）a new house once Larry changed jobs.

23. —Look! Somebody _____（clean）the sofa.

—Well, it wasn't me. I didn't do it.

24. —Take this medicine three times a day, Tom.

—Do I have to take it? It _____（taste）so terrible.

25. At this time tomorrow, we _____（fly）over the Atlantic.

26. The bag over there is so big that I suppose it _____（weigh）nearly sixty kilos.

27. —Jack, you look so great!

—Thanks! I have lost 20 pounds since I _____（hire）my personal trainer six months ago.

28. One Hundred Years of Solitude, a world-famous novel about a seven-generation Colombian family, _____（translate）into 37 languages since 1967.

29. Excuse me. I _____（not realize）I was blocking your way.

30. —Excuse me, but I wonder if Joan is available at 1:30 this afternoon.

—I'm afraid she _____（watch）Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone.

III. 单项选择。

31. _____ in the regulations that you should not tell other people the password of your e-mail account.

A. What is required

B. What requires

C. It is required

D. It requires

32. Food supplies in the flood-stricken area _____. We must act immediately before there's none left.

A. have run out

B. are running out

C. have been run out

D. are being run out

33. The twins, who _____ their homework, were allowed to play badminton on the playground.

A. will finish

B. finish

C. have finished

D. had finished

34. Frank _____ London by train which _____ at 8:30 next morning.

A. is leaving for; will leave

B. is leaving for; leaves

C. will leave for; will leave

D. leaves for; leaves

35. He _____ articles for our wall-newspaper these years, and he _____ about thirty articles.

A. has written; wrote

B. has been writing; wrote

C. is writing; has been writing

D. has been writing; has written

36. The number of deaths from heart disease will be reduced greatly if people _____ to eat more fruit and vegetables.

A. persuade

B. will persuade

C. be persuaded

D. are persuaded

37. —You look upset. What's the matter?

—I had _____ my proposal again.

A. turned over

B. turned on

C. turned off

D. turned down

38. To get a better grade, you should _____ the notes again before the test.

A. go over

B. get over

C. turn over

D. take over

39. Most parents _____ much importance to education. They will do their best to give their children that priceless gift.

A. attach

B. pay

C. link

D. apply

40. The two lawyers _____ for a few minutes about the exact meaning of the law.

A. argued

B. discussed

C. quarreled

D. fought

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

If it rains heavily on the Qixi Festival, some elderly Chinese will say it is because Zhi Nv, the Weaver Girl, __**41**__（cry）on the day she meets her husband Niu Lang, or the Cowherd, on the Milky Way（银河）.

Long, long ago, there __**42**__（be）an honest and kind-hearted fellow named Niu Lang. His parents died when he was a child. Later he __**43**__（drive）out of his home by his sister-in-law. One day he came across a beautiful girl, the Goddess's seventh daughter, who __**44**__（just escape）from boring heaven to look for fun. They lived happily and had two children.

But the Goddess of Heaven found out that the fairy girl had married a mere mortal. Finally they were separated by the Milky Way.

The tale of The Weaver Girl and the Cowherd __**45**__（celebrate）in the Qixi Festival since the Han Dynasty. The earliest-known reference to this famous myth dates back to over 2600 years ago, which __**46**__（tell）in a poem from the Classic of Poetry（《诗经》）.

Most Chinese remember being told this romantic tragedy when they were children on Qixi, which __**47**__（fall）on the seventh day of the seventh lunar month.

The love story of the Qixi Festival __**48**__（hand down）for generations. And it's certain that these ancient customs __**49**__（live）forever.

Even Qixi __**50**__（refer to）as the "Chinese Valentine's Day" nowadays. More and more young Chinese people meet in celebration of this day in a very similar way as that in western countries.

Unit 5 非谓语动词

语法精讲

非谓语动词，又叫非限定动词，是指在句子中不是谓语的动词，主要包括不定式、动名词和分词（分为现在分词和过去分词），即动词的非谓语形式。非谓语动词除了不能独立作谓语外，可以充当句子任何其他成分。

考点1 非谓语动词的形式和句法功能

1. 动词不定式变化形式

	主动	被动
一般式	to do	to be done
进行式	to be doing	/
完成式	to have done	to have been done

注意

① 否定形式：not+不定式，即not to do sth.

② 动词不定式的一般式：所表示的动作常发生在谓语动词的动作之后或与谓语动词所表示的动作同时进行。

Would you please help me to put things in order before we leave?

在我们离开之前，请帮我整理一下东西好吗?（help和to put同时发生）

The boy said he wanted to be a scientist.

这男孩说他想当一名科学家。（to be在wanted之后）

③ 动词不定式的进行式：所表示的动作正在进行。

When he came in, I happened to be reading a novel. 他进来的时候，我碰巧在看小说。

④ 动词不定式的完成式：所表示的动作在谓语动词的动作之前发生。

I am sorry to have kept you waiting.

对不起，让你久等了。（to have kept发生在am所表示的时间之前）

2. -ing（现在分词和动名词）变化形式

	主动	被动
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

现在分词和动名词形式一致，都是在动词后面加-ing。两者在句子功能方面大不相同：

① -ing形式作表语：如果-ing形式相当于一个名词，可以与主语交换位置，它就是动名词；如果-ing形式相当于形容词，不能与主语交换位置，它就是现在分词。

He remained standing beside the table. 他依然站在桌旁。（其中standing为现在分词）

One of the best exercises is jogging.

最佳的运动方式之一是慢跑。（其中jogging为动名词）

② -ing形式作定语：动名词作定语时，说明被修饰的名词的性能和用途，它和所修饰的名词在逻辑上没有主谓关系；现在分词作定语时，表示它所修饰的名词的行为，和它所修饰的名词在逻辑上有主谓关系（可以扩展为定语从句）。

a swimming（用途）pool=a pool for swimming（动名词）

a sleeping girl=a girl who is sleeping（现在分词）

③ 常用动名词搭配

be busy/active doing sth.

have difficulty/trouble/problem doing sth.

have a good/great/wonderful time doing sth.

spend/waste time doing sth.

There is no point/sense/harm/use doing sth.

3. 分词的变化形式

分词有现在分词和过去分词两种形式。现在分词有主动式和被动式之分，而过去分词本身表示被动或完成，因此只有一种形式。

		主动	被动
现在分词	一般式	doing	being done
	完成式	having done	having been done
过去分词		done	

现在分词和过去分词在句中所充当的句子功能相似，但是两者的形式不同，在表意方面也有很大区别。

① 在语态方面，现在分词与所修饰的名词之间是主动的逻辑关系，而过去分词多由及物动词变来，与所修饰的名词之间是被动的逻辑关系，不及物动词的过去分词不表示被动，只表示完成。

This is an exciting movie. 这是一部令人激动的电影。（exciting表主动，为现在分词）

We feel excited. 我们倍感激动。（excited表被动，为过去分词）

They picked up a lot of fallen leaves. 他们捡了很多落叶。（fallen表完成，为过去分词）

② 在时间方面，现在分词所表示的动作往往正在进行，而过去分词所表示的动作，往往已经完成。通过分词的不同形式，我们可以判定动作的状态是正在发生还是已经完成。

the changing world 正在变化着的世界

the changed world 已经起了变化的世界

4. 非谓语动词句法功能

非谓语动词	句法功能					
	主语	宾语	表语	定语	状语	补足语
不定式	√	√	√	√	√	√
动名词	√	√	√	√		
分词			√	√	√	√

考点2 非谓语动词作主语

1. 动名词和动词不定式作主语

动名词作主语往往表示普通的、一般的行为，不定式作主语常表示某次具体的行为。

Collecting information about children’s health is his job.

收集有关儿童健康的信息是他的工作。

To see is to believe. 百闻不如一见。

It’s very kind of you to have given us so much help.

你给了我们那么多的帮助真是太好了。

2. 用形式主语it代替动词不定式或动名词作主语的情况

动词不定式和动名词作主语时，常用it作形式主语，放在原主语的位置上。

（1）用形式主语it代替不定式作主语的常见句型有：

A. It’s difficult（important, necessary）for sb. to do sth. 某人做某事有困难（很重要，有必要）。

B. It’s kind（friendly, polite, careless, rude, cruel, clever, foolish, brave）of sb. to do sth. 某人做某事是善良的（友善的，礼貌的，粗心大意的，粗鲁的，残忍的，聪明的，愚蠢的，勇敢的）。

注意

不定式的逻辑主语一般由介词for引导，但下列表示人的性格行为特征的形容词作表语时，不定式的逻辑主语则由of引导：brave, courageous, careful, careless, clever, wise, foolish, silly, stupid, good, nice, kind, thoughtful, considerate, greedy, generous, honest, modest, polite, rude, cruel, selfish, lazy, wicked, wrong。

Experts say walking is one of the best ways for a person to stay healthy.

专家说步行是一个人保持健康的最佳方式之一。

It’s clever of you to have invented such a device. 你发明这样的装置很是聪明。

（2）用形式主语it代替动名词作主语的常见句型有：

A. It’s no good（use, fun）doing sth.

B. It’s（a）waste of time one’s doing sth.

考点3 非谓语动词作宾语

动名词和动词不定式可作宾语，主要有下面四种类型：

1. 只接不定式作宾语，而不能接动名词作宾语的动词

afford（付得起），apply（申请），arrange（安排），agree（同意），offer（提出），intend（打算），plan（计划），demand（要求），ask（要求），promise（答应），help（帮忙），prepare（准备），decide（决定），refuse（拒绝），choose（选择），wish（希望），want（想要），expect（期待，期望），pretend（假装），manage（设法），determine（决心）

2. 只接动名词作宾语，而不能接不定式作宾语的动词

admit（承认），advise（建议），allow（允许），appreciate（感激），avoid（避免），consider（考虑），delay（推迟），deny（否认），dislike（不喜欢），enjoy（喜爱），escape（逃脱），excuse（原谅），finish（完成），forbid（禁止），give up（放弃），imagine（想象），keep（保持），mention（提及），mind（介意），miss（没赶上），permit（允许），practise（练习），prohibit（禁止），put off（推迟），risk（冒险），suggest（建议）

3. 既可接不定式作宾语，也可接动名词作宾语且意思一致的动词

有些动词既可接动名词作宾语，又可接不定式作宾语，且两者意思基本相同：like（喜欢），love（喜欢），hate（憎恨），prefer（宁可），begin（开始），start（开始），continue（继续）等。

4. 既可接不定式作宾语，也可接动名词作宾语但意思不一致的动词

有的动词既可接不定式作宾语，也可接动名词作宾语，两者意思不同，要注意区别：

（1）remember（记得），forget（忘记），regret（后悔）接不定式指该不定式所表示的动作还未发生，后接动名词（有时可用完成

式），则指该动名词所表示的动作已经发生。

I regret saying what I said, and I'll remember never to say it again.

我懊悔刚才所说的话，并且牢记再也不讲了。

（2）try接不定式表示设法做某事，接动名词表示做某事试试（看有什么效果）。

You shouldn't try to leave the restaurant without paying. You should try communicating with the manager. 你不应该试图不付账就离开饭店。你应该尝试和经理沟通一下。

（3）mean接不定式表示打算（想要）做某事，接动名词表示意味着（要）做某事。

If we mean to catch the early bus, that means getting up before five.

要想赶早班车，我们就得在5点钟以前起床。

（4）stop接动名词表示停止做某事，接不定式表示停下正在做的事去做另一事（注意：接不定式时，不定式不是宾语，而是目的状语）。

The computer stopped working, and I had to stop to get someone to mend it.

电脑坏了，我不得不停下来去找人修理电脑。

（5）can't help接动名词表示禁不住去做某事，接不定式表示不能帮助做某事。

She's a beautiful girl, and you can't help liking her. However, I can't help to run after her. 她是一个漂亮的姑娘，你会禁不住喜欢她的。但我不能帮忙去追求她。

（6）go on接不定式表示做完某事后接着做另一件事，接动名词表示继续做正在做的事。

The minister went on writing for two hours, and then went on to talk about foreign policy. 部长一连写了两个小时，接着就畅谈外交政策。

注意

动词用作介词的宾语时，要用动名词形式，不能用不定式。但是，当非谓语动词位于but, except后作宾语时，习惯上要用不定式，并且，当其前有动词do时，则不定式不带to；若其前没有动词do，则不定式通常带to。

She was late because of missing the bus. 她迟到了，因为没有赶上公共汽车。

We had no choice but to wait. 我们除了等待之外别无选择。

I could do nothing except agree. 我除了同意，没有别的办法。

考点4 非谓语动词作表语

1. 动词不定式和动名词作表语

不定式和动名词作表语相当于名词作表语，表示主语的内容，主语和表语可以对调。

My job is teaching.→Teaching is my job. 我的工作是教书。

My job is to teach.→To teach is my job. 我的工作是教书。

2. 分词作表语

分词作表语相当于形容词作表语，主语和表语不可对调。分词作表语时总是放在系动词之后，构成系表结构，表示主语所处的状态。-ing形式通常表示主动或进行，过去分词则表示被动或完成。

I think the shop is closed at this time of day. 我觉得商店每天这个时候关门。

The story sounds interesting. 这个故事听起来很有趣。

注意

现在分词或过去分词常用作表语的动词有：interest, move, discourage, amuse, astonish, frighten, excite, inspire, please, satisfy, tire, worry, surprise, bore, disappoint, encourage, puzzle, shock等。通常修饰人用过去分词，意为“某人感觉……的”，常构成“be+过去分词+介词+宾语”的结构；修饰物时则用现在分词形式，意为“令人……的”，常用来表示事物或人的特点、属性等。

I am interested in English. 我对英语感兴趣。

His performance is satisfying. 他的表现是令人满意的。

考点5 非谓语动词作定语

动词不定式、动名词和分词都可作定语。动名词和单独的分词作定语，往往位于所修饰的中心词之前；动词不定式和分词短语作定语，需位于中心词后面，即充当后置定语。

1. 动词不定式作定语

不定式在句中作定语时通常为后置定语，即放在被修饰名词或代词后。

I have nothing to say about this question. 在这个问题上，我没有什么话要说。

He was the first guest to arrive. 他是第一个到达的客人。

不定式与其所修饰的词构成逻辑上的被动关系，而该不定式为不及物动词时，其后须加上适当的介词，构成及物动词短语。可转换成：介词+which+to do作定语。

I need a piece of paper to write on. 我需要一张写字用的纸。

→I need a piece of paper on which to write.

不定式常作下列名词的定语：attempt, ability, anything, chance, desire, determination, decision, effort, failure, intention, need, opportunity, plan, promise, pressure, right, tendency, time, way等。

They have now an opportunity to go abroad to study further.

他们现在有机会出国深造。

由only, last, next序数词或形容词的最高级修饰的名词常用不定式作定语。

Mr. Wang is always the first man to arrive at the office and the last man to leave.

王先生总是最先到办公室，并最后一个离开。

在一些固定句型中，习惯上使用不定式。

It’s your turn to speak now. 该轮到你说了。

It’s time to go to school. 该上学了。

2. 动名词作定语

动名词作定语不以短语的形式出现，而且总是位于被修饰名词之前（在许多情况下构成合成名词），用以表示被修饰名词的用途、目的和

场合：

reading room 阅览室

operating table 手术台

swimming pool 游泳池

singing competition 歌咏比赛

drinking water 饮用水

washing machine 洗衣机

3. 分词作定语

单个的分词作定语可以置于被修饰词语之前，但若是分词短语作定语则应置于被修饰名词之后。如被修饰的名词是something, anything, everything, nothing 等，分词放在被修饰名词的后面。

We can see the rising sun. 我们可以看到东升的旭日。

The boy hurt by the car was sent to the hospital immediately.

被车伤着的男孩被立即送到了医院。

There is nothing interesting. 没什么有趣的事。

分词短语作定语时，通常放在被修饰的名词之后，它的作用相当于一个定语从句。

This will be the best novel of its kind ever written（=that has ever been written）.

这将是这类小说中写得最好的。

The man waiting for you（=who is waiting for you）is your friend.

正在等你的人是你的朋友。

考点6 非谓语动词作状语

动词不定式和分词可作状语。两者作状语时应和句子主语含有逻辑上的主动或被动关系，否则应使用独立主格结构。

1. 动词不定式作状语

动词不定式作状语可表示目的、原因及结果等，其逻辑主语就是句子的主语，因此动词不定式作状语往往用主动式。

We eat to live, but we don’t live to eat.

我们吃饭是为了活着，但是活着不是为了吃饭。（目的状语）

She burst into tears to hear the bad news. 听到这个坏消息后她痛哭流涕。（原因状语）

表目的的不定式还常与so as或in order连用，构成so as（not）to do sth.和in order（not）to do sth.的动词不定式结构，在句中充当目的状语。so as to do sth.不可用于句首。

To get there in time, we got up very early. 为了及时赶到那里，我们早早地起床了。

=In order to get there in time, we got up very early.

=We got up very early（in order/so as）to get there in time.

only to do sth.表示一个与主语愿望相反的或出乎主语意料的结果，或用来暗示最初的未能实现的动作。

I worked hard, only to fail at last. 我努力工作，结果最后却失败了。

> 注意
>
> 有时，不定式还可独立修饰一个句子，表明说话人的态度。常见的此类不定式有to tell you the truth（说实话），to be honest（老实说），to be frank（坦率地说），to be fair（公平地讲）等。
>
> To tell you the truth, I don’t like that film. 说实话，我不喜欢那部电影。

2. 分词作状语

现在分词和过去分词作状语，多说明动作发生的方式或伴随情况。主语在逻辑上与分词如果是主动关系，则用现在分词，如果是被动关系则用过去分词。分词可以位于句首、句中或者句末，其作用相当于一个相应的状语从句。

Hearing the bad news, she burst into tears. 听到这个坏消息，她痛哭流涕。（时间状语）

→When/as she heard the bad news, she burst into tears.（时间状语从句）

Given more time, we could have done it better.

如果再多给些时间，我们可以做得更好。（条件状语）

→If we are given more time, we could have done it better.（条件状语从句）

现在分词作结果状语多位于句末，表示谓语动词本身的动作造成的结果，其作用相当于一个定语从句。

It rained heavily, causing severe flooding in that country.

大雨滂沱，造成那个国家洪水泛滥。

→It rained heavily, which caused severe flooding in that country.

如果不定式或分词表示的动作在谓语动词表示的动作之前发生，该不定式或分词需用完成式。

I’m sorry to have given you so much trouble. 对不起给你添了这么多麻烦。

Having finished my homework, I went to play football. 完成了作业后，我出去踢球了。

→After I finished my homework, I went to play football.

3. 含有非谓语动词的独立主格结构

非谓语动词作状语，它的逻辑主语应和句子主语保持一致。但有时非谓语动词带有自己的逻辑主语，在句中作状语，这种现象称为独立主格结构。独立主格结构没有主语和谓语，在语法上不是句子，一般有逗号与主句分开。有时可以用with引出。

独立主格结构由名词或代词加上其他成分（分词、不定式、名词、代词、形容词、副词或介词短语）构成。

这种结构通常在句子中起方式、时间、原因、条件等状语或状语从句的作用，主要用于书面语。使用非谓语动词形式的独立主格结构可以改为状语从句。

（1）“名词（代词）+过去分词”。

The signal given, the bus started. 信号发出后，公共汽车就启动了。

→After the signal was given, the bus started.

（2）“名词（代词）+现在分词”。

Today being Monday, the library isn't open. 今天星期一，图书馆不开放。

→As（Since）today is Monday, the library isn't open.

Summer coming, it gets hotter and hotter. 随着夏天的到来，天气越来越热了。

→As summer comes, it gets hotter and hotter.

（3）“名词（代词）+不定式”。

With so many people to help him, he is sure to succeed.

有如此多的人来帮助他，他一定会成功的。

→As so many people help him, he is sure to succeed.

4. “连词+非谓语动词”作状语

可以看作非谓语动词前面加连词，也可以是状语从句的主语与主句主语一致或者是it，并且从句谓语中含有be，把be和主语一起省略后的省略句。

The flowers his friend gave him will die unless watered（=unless they are watered）every day. 他的朋友送给他的花，如果不每天浇水就会死的。（water和flowers之间是被动关系）

Although answering（=Although Tom answered）all the questions in the test, Tom did not get a good grade. 尽管在考试中回答了所有的问题，汤姆也没有得到好成绩。（answer和Tom之间是主动关系）

考点7 非谓语动词作补足语

在主动语态句子中，动词不定式和分词可作宾语补足语，构成“v.+宾语+宾语补足语”的结构，当这个主动语态的句子变成被动语态，即原宾语成为句子主语时，其补足语称作主语补足语。

Father will not allow us to play on the street. 父亲不让我们在街上玩耍。（宾语补足语）

We will not be allowed to play on the street. 我们不被允许在街上玩耍。（主语补足语）

1. 动词（短语）+宾语+带to的不定式（作宾语补足语）

有些动词（短语）后跟带to的不定式作补语，即：动词（短语）+宾语+to do sth.

拥有这种结构的常见动词（短语）有：advise, appoint, allow, ask, beg, cause, encourage, expect, forbid, force, get, intend, invite, like, love, order, persuade, prefer, require, teach, tell, want, warn, wish, call on, depend on等。

2. 感官动词+宾语+宾语补足语

感官动词see, watch, observe, notice, look at, hear, listen to, smell, taste, feel等的宾语补足语有3种形式，即动词原形（省略to 的不定式，变成被动语态要加上to）、现在分词和过去分词。现在分词表示主动或正在进行，过去分词表示被动或完成，动词原形表示主动和完成。

（1）不带to的不定式充当感官动词补语。

I heard her sing an English song just now.

刚才我听见她唱了一首英文歌。（省略to 的不定式作宾语补足语）

She was heard to sing an English song just now.

刚才她被听到唱了一首英文歌。（带to的不定式作主语补足语）

（2）现在分词充当感官动词补语。

I heard her singing an English song when I passed by her room yesterday.

昨天经过她房间时，我听见她在唱英文歌。（宾语补足语）

She was heard singing an English song by me when I passed by her room yesterday.

昨天我经过她房间时，她被我听到在唱英文歌。（主语补足语）

（3）过去分词充当感官动词补语。

I heard the English song sung many times.

我多次听到有人唱这首英文歌。（宾语补足语）

The English song was heard sung many times.

这首英文歌多次被听到唱。（主语补足语）

3. 使役动词+宾语+非谓语动词（作宾语补足语）

常见使役动词let, make, have, get+宾语+非谓语动词（作宾语补足语）

（1）let sb./sth. do 意为“让某人/某物做……”。

Let them stay in the classroom and do their exercises themselves.

让他们留在教室里面自己做练习。

（2）make sb./sth. do 意为“使/让某人/某物做……”，变被动语态时，不定式需带to。

The teacher made the students stay after class. 老师让这些学生下课后留下来。

The students were made to stay after class. 这些学生被要求下课后留下来。

（3）make sb./sth. done 意为“让/使某人或某事被……”。

He raised his voice to make himself heard. 他提高了嗓门，以便让自己被人听到。

Can you easily make yourself understood in English?

你能使用英文把意思表达清楚吗？

（4）have sb./sth. do意为“让某人或某物做……”。

She had her children cook dinner for her. 她让孩子们为她做饭。

（5）have sb./sth. done 意为“让某人/某事被……”。

I had my hair cut last Saturday. 上周六我理了发。

（6）get sb. to do sth. 意为“让某人做某事”，注意to不可省略。

How can we get all the employees to arrive on time?

我们如何才能让所有员工都准时抵达？

（7）get sb./sth. done意为“让某人/某事被……”。

We’re getting our house painted this weekend. 我们这周末要请人粉刷房屋。

4. find/leave/keep+宾语+非谓语动词（作宾语补足语）

动词find, leave, keep也可以接非谓语动词作补足语。

She found a wallet lying on the ground.

她发现一只钱包在地上。（现在分词作宾语补足语）

They found the street lined with people.

他们发现大街两侧都站着人。（过去分词作宾语补足语）

He measured the cloth and found it（to be）the exact size.

他量了一下布，发现大小正好合适。（不定式作宾语补足语，to be可省略）

For most of the day he can still be found working somewhere in the plant. 白天大部分时间人们还发现他在厂里某个地方工作。（被动语态，现在分词作主语补足语）

This method was found to be practicable.

大家发现这方法很可行。（被动语态，动词不定式作主语补足语）

> 注意
>
> 不及物动词的过去分词作宾补表示完成或状态。
>
> I looked down at my neck and found my necklace gone.（状态）
>
> I was surprised to find my hometown changed so much.（完成）

5. catch+宾语+现在分词（作宾语补足语）

catch可接现在分词作宾语补足语，构成catch sb. doing的结构，意为“撞见某人正在做某事”，其被动形式为：sb. be caught doing sth。

Next time I catch you stealing from others’ pockets, I’ll turn you in to the police.

下次再让我看到你偷别人口袋里的东西，我就把你送到警察局。（作宾语补足语）

She was caught cheating in the exam. 她考试作弊被抓到了。（作主语补足语）

6. with+宾语+非谓语动词（作宾语补足语）

（1）“with+宾语+不定式”通常表示不定式动作尚未发生或在当时看来尚未发生。

With all this work to do, I won’t have time to go out.

有这么多工作要做，我就没有时间出去了。

（2）“with+宾语+现在分词”指动作正在进行或在当时看来已是一种在持续的状态。

He soon fell asleep with the light still burning. 他很快就睡着了，灯还亮着。

> 注意
>
> 正如进行时态有时可以表示将来意义一样，有时“现在分词”也可表示将来意义。
>
> With winter coming on, it’s time to buy warm clothes.
>
> 冬天就要到了，该买暖和衣裳了。

（3）“with+宾语+过去分词”指与其前的名词或代词为被动关系。

She sat with her head bent. 她低着头坐在那里。

7. 不定式作主语补足语的常见结构

一些动词用于被动语态中，后面常接不定式作主语补足语，构成如下结构：

Sb./Sth.+be said/believed/known/reported/considered/found/thought to do/to have done/to be done/to have been done.例如：

Shakespeare is considered to be one of the greatest writers.

莎士比亚被认为是最伟大的作家之一。

（=It is considered that Shakespeare is one of the greatest writers.）

He was said to have been cheated in the street. 据说，他在大街上被骗了。

（=It was said that he has been cheated in the street.）

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. Seen my grandparents and aunt chat happily online, my parents and I

felt a sense of contentment.

2. The chair looks rather hard, but in fact it is very comfortable to sit.

3. Working hard, and you will make it.

4. The boy wanted to ride his bicycle in the street, but his mother told him not.

5. We hurriedly ended our meeting, left many problems to be settled.

6. Paul doesn't have to be made learn, because he always works hard.

7. Suddenly there appeared a young lady dressing in green.

8. During the examination we are asked staying in our seats and keep eyes on our work.

9. They kept me locking in a room and I was rescued by the police two days later.

10. Our school provides all the senior students with easy access to read books.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

11. ① She told me the book _____（call）Pride and Prejudice.

② She starred in a TV play _____（call）Katerina.

12. ① We have prepared a simple dish, mainly _____（consist）of rice and vegetables.

② It's easy for us to prepare the dish, because it mainly _____（consist）of rice and vegetables.

13. ① _____（know）basic first aid techniques will help you respond quickly to emergencies.

② _____（know）basic first aid techniques, and you will respond quickly to emergencies.

14. ① The bridge _____（build）in 2012 helps promote tourism in this area.

② The bridge _____（build）now will help promote tourism in this area.

③ The bridge _____（build）next year will help promote tourism in

this area.

15. ① _____（see）from the top of the hill, I find the city more beautiful.

② _____（see）from the top of the hill, the city looks more beautiful to us.

16. ① She got to the railway station in a hurry, only _____（tell）the train had already gone.

② Last Friday a storm swept through two villages in the New Territories, _____（destroy）fourteen homes.

17. ① With the work _____（finish）, he went out to play.

② With a lot of work _____（do）, he had to stay at home.

③ With the price of houses _____（go）up, many people can't afford a new house.

18. ① _____（face）with the difficulty, I usually choose to refer to relevant learning materials or Web pages.

② _____（face）the difficulty, I usually choose to refer to relevant learning materials or Web pages.

19. ① Though _____（tell）of the danger, he still risked his life in saving the boy.

②When _____（wait）at the bus stop, I heard someone behind me shouting loudly, "Help!"

20. ① _____（climb）up through the branches, I seized him, gave him a scolding and _____（drop）him softly to the ground.

② I gently picked up the baby bird, climbed up the ladder and, _____（stretch）my arm out as far as I could, placed it in the nest.

21. ① _____（make）it easier to get in touch with us, you'd better keep this card at hand.

② _____（order）over a week ago, the books are expected to arrive any time now.

22. ① —Can I smoke here?

—Sorry. We don't allow _____（smoke）here.

② My parents don’t allow me _____（go）out at night.

③ Passengers are not allowed _____（smoke）.

23. ① He was busy writing a story, only _____（stop）once in a while to smoke a cigarette.

② I hurried to the supermarket, only _____（find）it was closed.

24. ① In the past he often made his sister _____（cry）, but now he is often made _____（cry）by his sister.

② My father himself made some candles _____（give）light in the past.

25. With tears filling his eyes, Tom shouted out the words _____（hide）in his hearts for years.

26. Don’t sit there _____（do）nothing. Come and help me with this table.

27. I like getting up very early in summer. The morning air is so good _____（breathe）.

28. You can’t imagine what difficulty we had _____（walk）home in the snowstorm.

29. He is very popular among his students as he always tries to make them _____（interest）in his lecture.

30. The meeting room _____（be）very crowded, he had to stand.

Ⅲ. 单项选择。

31. —Come on, please give me some ideas about the project.

—Sorry. With so much work _____ my mind, I almost break down.

A. filled

B. filling

C. to fill

D. fills

32. Poor boy! His _____ looks and _____ hands suggested he was very afraid.

A. frightening; trembling

B. frightened; trembling

C. frightening; trembled

D. frightened; trembled

33. All the staff in our company are considering _____ to the city center for the fashion show.

A. going

B. having gone

C. to have gone

D. to go

34. Technologically _____, this new design does better than any earlier design of the same kind.

A. speaking

B. spoken

C. speak

D. to speak

35. Having finished her own painting, Mary went on _____ others in the art class.

A. helping

B. to help

C. with help

D. having helped

36. It is no use _____ him to give up smoking. He won’t listen!

A. to persuade

B. trying to persuade

C. persuading

D. try to persuade

37. I have a lot of readings _____ before the end of this term.

A. completing

B. to complete

C. completed

D. being completed

38. According to a recent U.S. survey, children spend up to 25 hours a week _____ TV.

A. watching

B. to watching

C. to watch

D. watch

39. The newly-discovered evidence led to the criminal _____ to five years in prison.

A. to be sentenced

B. being sentenced

C. sentenced

D. be sentenced

40. —What is your daughter doing now?

—She is on the phone, _____ with one of her schoolmates.

A. to chat

B. chatting

C. chatted

D. being chatted

41. _____, tears came to her eyes.

A. Reading the letter

B. While reading the letter

C. As she was reading the letter

D. To read the letter

42. —What made her unhappy? —_____.

A. Because she lost her wallet

B. She lost her wallet

C. Losing her wallet

D. To lose her wallet

43. The head teacher insisted that every minute _____ made full use of _____ for the mid-exam.

A. be; to prepare

B. was; preparing

C. be; preparing

D. was; to prepare

44. _____ in thought, he almost ran into the car in front of him.

A. Losing

B. Having lost

C. Lost

D. To lose

45. The experiment shows that proper amounts of exercise, if _____ regularly, can improve our health.

A. being carried out

B. carrying out

C. carried out

D. to carry out

IV. 阅读下列短文，使用括号内动词的正确形式（不定式、-ing形式、过去分词）填空。

A primary school has put up signs to warn parents to greet their children with a smile at the end of the day rather than staring at their screens.

It has become a common sight at the school gates to see children running up to their parents, only __**46**__（find）them looking through a text message or scrolling through Facebook.

Now the headmistress at St Joseph's RC Primary School, in Middlesbrough, has set up the signs at all three entrances to the school, __

47 （say）“Greet your child with a smile, not a mobile.

She said: “We are trying **48** （develop）our speaking and listening in school and we thought it was a really simple way **49** （get）the message across. It wasn’t an issue among our parents, it just emphasizes that **50** （speak）and listening helps the children to have discussions.”

A parent Danielle Savage said: “I agree with it, it’s a good thing. But it only works if you’re having discussions all the time at home, not just when you’re collecting your child.”

Some people when **51** （question）were more hesitant about the signs, with one parent, whose child is in the foundation stage, **52** （call）the move “a bit daft”.

It is the latest school **53** （take）action against parents picking up their children at the end of the day. Last month, a head teacher banned parents from talking to teachers and set up an exclusion zone to prevent abuse at the school gates.

Almost a third of children **54** （start）school are not ready for the classroom, with many lacking social skills, having speech problems or not toilet **55** （train）, the survey of senior primary school staff found.

Unit 6 情态动词和虚拟语气

语法精讲

一、情态动词

情态动词主要包括can, may, must, shall, would, need等词及其过去式形式。

考点1 情态动词的用法

情态动词可以用来表示能力、许可、必要、义务、命令、劝告、询问、需要、应该、敢于等概念或态度。如：can（could），may（might）, shall（should）, will（would）, must。

1. can/could的用法

（1）表示具备某种“能力”，但不一定做事情，仅仅表示有能力。can表示现在；could表示过去。

I could do such things then, but I can’t now.

我那时候能做这样的事情，但现在不能了。

（2）表示“请求”（疑问句中）、“允许”，但could 比can 委婉；两者都指现在。回答一律用can或cannot，也可以用mustn’t。

—Can/could I smoke here? 我可以在这里抽烟吗？

—Yes, you can. 是的，你可以。

No, you cannot smoke here. 不，你不能在这里抽烟。

（3）特殊句式：

1）cannot/can never... too... 或cannot... enough “无论怎么……也不过分；越……越好；非常……”。

One cannot be too careful. 越仔细越好。

I cannot thank you enough. 我对你感激不尽。

2）cannot help doing.../cannot help but do... “禁不住；不由得；不得不”。

John could not help laughing when he saw the funny look of the monkey.

当约翰看到猴子滑稽的样子时，不由得笑了起来。

I could not help but think this is a very queer life. 我忍不住想这真是十分奇怪的生活。

2. may/might 的用法

（1）表示允许或请求允许，might的语气比may更礼貌。

May I turn on the TV? 我可以打开电视吗？

She asked if she might borrow my bike. 她问是否可以借用我的自行车。

（2）表示可能性，意为“也许”。这时may和might无时间上的差别，只是might在语气上更不肯定一些。

You may / might have some fever. 你也许发烧了。

He said that the news might be true. 他说这消息可能是真的。

表示可能性时，may / might不用于疑问句，可用can / could或别的说法。

Can/could they be having a bath? 他们可能在洗澡吗？

（3）构成句型：may / might（just）as well“不妨，最好”，与had better相近，意为“还是做某事的好；不妨去做某事”。

After sweeping the courtyard, we might as well clean the rooms.

我们扫完院子后，顺手把房间也扫一扫。

3. must的用法

（1）表示义务、命令或劝告，意为“必须”。可用于任何人称。

We must take this seriously. 我们必须严肃对待这事。

在回答由must引起的问题时，如果是否定回答，多用needn’t或don’t have to，表示“不必，没必要”；而mustn’t表示“绝对不行，不可以”的意

思，有时用来回答can或may开头的问句，表示语气很强的不允许。

—Must the ladies wear dresses? 女士们必须着连衣裙吗？

—No, they don’t have to/they needn’t. 不，不必。

—Can / May I come in? 我可以进来吗？

—No, you can’t / mustn’t. 不行/绝对不行。

（2）表示推测，表示“肯定，一定”之意，此时，must只用于肯定句。在否定句或疑问句中，用can / could。

They must be watching the news now. 他们这会儿肯定在看新闻。

They can’t / couldn’t be watching the news now. 他们这会儿不可能在看新闻。

Can / Could they be watching the news now? 他们这会儿可能在看新闻吗？

（3）表示“偏偏，非要，硬要”，有时表示不巧，有时表示固执，通常都是指令人不快的事。

Must you make so much noise? 你非要弄出这么多噪音吗？

Why must you always interrupt me? 你为什么非要老是打断我？

Just when I was busy, the neighbor must come and chatter.

正当我忙碌的时候，邻居偏偏过来唠叨。

4. shall的用法

（1）用于第二、三人称，表示说话人的命令、警告、强制、允诺、威胁或决心等。

You shall go to the ball. 你得去参加舞会。

He shall stay in bed. 他必须躺在床上。

（2）表示强制，用于法令、条约、规章中，意为“必须，应该”。

Candidates shall remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected.

试卷完全收回后，应试者才能离开座位。

（3）用于疑问句中，与第一、三人称连用，表示征求对方的意见，may用于征求对方的许可，shall用于征求对方的意见或指示。

Shall I turn on the lights? 我可以开灯吗？

Shall he wait for you outside? 要不要他在外面等你？

5. should的用法

与ought to意思相近，但语气较ought to弱些；可表示推测，意为“可能，该”。

（1）表示“应该，应当”。

You should help your mother with the housework. 你应该帮你母亲做家务。

Should I wear a coat? 我要穿大衣吗？

（2）表示“可能，该（=will probably）”，是一种试探性的推断。

He should arrive soon. 他可能很快就到了。

The train should have already left. 火车应该已经走了。

（3）表示“竟然”。

It’s strange that he should be late. 真奇怪，他竟会迟到。

（4）should have done表示“本应该做某事，但事实上却没有做”；shouldn’t have done表示“本不该做某事，但事实上却做了”。

You should have got up earlier. 你本应该早点起的。

You shouldn’t have told him about it. 你本不该把这件事告诉他的。

6. will/would 的用法

（1）表示请求、建议等，would比will委婉客气。

Would you pass me the book? 你把那本书递给我好吗？

（2）表示意志、愿望和决心。

I will never do that again. 我再也不会那样做了。

They asked if we would do that again. 他们问到，我们是否愿意再次那样做。

（3）用will be和“will（would）+have+过去分词”的结构表示推测，主要用于第二、三人称。前者表示对目前情况的推测，后者表示对已经完成的动作或事态的推测。

This will be the book you want. 这本书应该是你想要的。

I thought you would have finished this by now. 我认为你现在应该已经完成了。

（4）will表示习惯、请求等。

Every day he will sit here hour after hour doing nothing.（习惯）

他每天就坐在那里，却什么事也不做。

Will you help me with my English?（请求）你能帮我提高我的英语吗？

（5）would可表示过去反复发生的动作或某种倾向。would表示过去习惯时比used to正式，并没有“现已无此习惯”的含义。

During the vacation he would visit me every week. 假期里，他每个星期都会来看我。

考点2 情态动词表示推测

must, can/could, may/might可以用来表示对事情进行推测。其中，must语气最强，表示“一定”（只用于肯定句中），may语气次之，表示“可能”，might/could语气最弱，表示“也许，或许”，can表示推测时一般用于否定句和疑问句中，在否定推测中语气最强，其次是can’t，意为“不可能”，may not（可能不）和might not/could not（或许不）的语气最弱。

1. 对现在或将来的推测（结构：情态动词+do）

情态动词可以用来表示对现在或将来的情况进行推测。

You have worked hard all day. You must be tired. 你辛苦工作了一整天，一定累了。

She might come soon. 或许她很快就来了。

She could be lost. 她可能迷路了。

She may be in the wrong room. 她可能走错了房间。

The man over there can’t be Jack—he’s in hospital.

那边的那个人不可能是杰克——他住院了。

注意

如果是对现在或未来正在发生的事情进行推测，可以使用“情态动词+be doing”结构。

My friend may be still sleeping at home now. 我的朋友现在可能正在家里睡觉。

Can we be working at the same company next year?

明年我们还能在同一家公司上班吗？

2. 对过去的推测（结构：情态动词+have done）

情态动词还可用于表示对过去事情的推测。

She might have got up late. 她可能是起来晚了。

He may have felt ill. 他可能是生病了。

His clothes is wet. He must have forgotten to bring the umbrella.

他的衣服湿了。他一定忘记带伞了。

He can’t have stayed at home, for I just met him in the library.

他不可能在家，因为我刚刚在图书馆遇见他了。

She could have taken the wrong bus. 她可能坐错了公交车。

注意

could可以表示过去笼统的而不是具体的可能性，此时不需采用could+have done的结构，而直接使用could do的结构即可。

Prices could be high in the sixteenth century. 16世纪的物价可能很高。

考点3 “情态动词+have done”表示责备的语气

可用于表责备语气的情态动词有：should, ought to, could, might, need等，它们常被用来表示说话人对过去事情的不满或遗憾，带有较强烈的责备语气，其结构为“情态动词+have done”。

1. should（ought to）have done“本应该……”

表示过去应该做而（实际）没有做的事情，含有责备或遗憾的语

气，其否定形式为“should not/ought not to have done”。should have done还可以用来表示惊讶、赞叹等情绪。

You should have dug some when you first saw them blooming this spring.

你应该在今年春天第一次看到它们盛开的时候就挖一些的。

2. could/might have done “本来能够（会）……”

表示过去本来能够（可以）做某事，但实际上没有做到。

I could have lent you the money. Why didn’t you ask me?

我本来可以借这笔钱给你的。你为什么不问问我？

3. need+have+done “原本需要做……”

表示本来需要做某事而没有做，“needn’t+have+done”则表示“本来不必做某事而做了”。

I needn’t have bought so much wine—only five people came.

我本来没有必要买这么多酒，只来了五个人。

He need have hurried to the station. In that case, he wouldn’t have missed the train.

他本来需要快点去车站，那样的话，他就不会误了火车。

二、虚拟语气

虚拟语气可以用来表示说话人主观上所说的话并不是事实，而是一种假设、愿望、建议、请求、命令、空想、猜测、必要性和可能性等。

考点1 状语从句中的虚拟语气

1. 非真实条件句

（1）虚拟现在时（与现在事实相反），从句谓语形式用动词的过去式（be一般用were，而不用was），主句谓语形式为“should（would, could, might）+动词原形”。

If I knew her number I could ring her up.

要是我知道她的电话号码，我就可以给她打电话了。（事实是我不知道）

（2）虚拟过去时（与过去事实相反），从句谓语形式用“had+过去分词”，主句谓语形式为“should（would, could, might）+have+过去分词”。

If we had found him earlier we could have saved his life.

要是我们当时早点找到他的话，我们就可以救活他。（事实是我们没能早点找到他）

（3）虚拟将来时（与将来事实相反），从句谓语形式用动词的一般过去式，或“were to+动词原形”或“should+动词原形”，主句谓语形式“should（would, could, might）+动词原形”。

If I asked him, I’m sure he’d help us.

如果我恳求他，他肯定会帮助我们。（事实是我不打算恳求他）

注意特殊情况

① 虚拟条件从句和主句动作发生的时间不一致时，主句和从句的谓语动词要根据各自所指的不同时间选用适当的虚拟语气形式，这种现象称为错综时间虚拟条件句。

If you had spoken to him last time you saw him, you would know what to do now.

如果你上次见他时和他说过话，你就会知道你现在要做些什么。（过去+现在）

② 若虚拟条件句中含有were或had, should等助动词或情态动词时，连词if可以省略，而将were, had, should提前，构成倒装语序。

Were I in your position（=If I were in your position）I would go.

如果我处在你的处境，我就走了。

Had you arrived five minutes earlier（=If you had arrived five minutes earlier）, you could have seen them off. 如果你早到五分钟，你就可以给他们送行了。

Should he come（=If he should come）, tell him to ring me up.

如果他来的话，叫他打电话给我。

③ 利用语境不直接说出条件的句子称为含蓄虚拟条件句。

A. 用介词引入条件

* but for（若不是，如没有）：注意，凡是出现这个复合介词的句子，必须要用虚拟语气。

We would have had a pleasant journey but for the rain.（=We would have had a pleasant journey if it hadn't rained.）如果没有下雨，我们的旅程会很愉快。

* without/with（在不具备/具备……的条件下）。

Without his help, I could not have done it well.（=If he hadn't helped me, I could not have done it well.）要是没有他的帮助，我们不可能做得这么顺利。

With favorable winds, we might have got there in two days.（=If there should be favorable winds, we might have got there in two days.）要是顺风的话，我们可能两天后就抵达那里了。

B. 分词短语充当条件状语（分词短语本身就具有充当条件状语的功能）。

Given a certain opportunity, he could have shown more talent.（=If he had been given a certain opportunity, he could have shown more talent.）要是能有一定的机会，他也许就能展示出更大的才能。

C. 用上下文暗示条件。常用来表示不具备条件的连词，如：but, or或otherwise等。

I would have failed but that you helped me. 要不是你们帮助我，我就会失败。（but表示让步关系，意为"除非，要不是"，常与that一起构成but that，相当于if... not...）

I was so busy then, otherwise, I would have finished it.（If I hadn't been busy then, I would have finished it.）那时我很忙，否则我早就完成了。

I might have given you more help, but I was too busy.

我可能会给你更多的帮助的，但那时我太忙了。

More water and the young trees couldn't have died.（=If you had given them more water, the young trees couldn't have died.）如果你给那些小树多浇点水，它们就不会死了。

2. as if / though引导的从句

在as if或as though引导的方式状语从句或表语从句中，用过去时表示与现在事实相反或对现在情况有怀疑；用过去完成时表示对过去事实或过去想象中的动作或情况。

The teacher treats the pupil as if/as though he were her own child.

这位老师对待这位学生就像对自己的孩子一样。（对现在的虚拟）

He looks as if/as though he had been hit by lighting.

他看起来像曾经被雷击过似的。（对过去的虚拟）

They talked and talked as if/as though they would never meet again.

他们说啊说，就好像他们再也见不到对方了一样。（对将来的虚拟）

考点2 名词性从句中的虚拟语气

1. 虚拟语气在宾语从句中的应用

（1）在表示愿望的动词wish之后的宾语从句中，需用虚拟语气。宾语从句用过去时表示与现在事实相反；用过去完成时表示与过去事实相反。

I wish I knew what was going to happen. 我真希望我能知道要发生什么事。

She wished she had stayed at home. 她希望当时她在家。

I wish I were rich. 我真希望我很有钱。

（2）在表示“坚持”“命令”“建议”“要求”等词后的宾语从句要用虚拟语气。这类动词简称“一二四四”： 一个坚持（insist）；两个命令（order, command）；四项要求（demand, desire, require, request）；四条建议（advise, suggest, propose, recommend）。这类虚拟语气由“should+动词原形”构成，其中的should在美式英语中通常可以省略。

He insisted that I（should）go with them. 他坚持要我同他们一起去。

He ordered that it（should）be sent back. 他命令把它送回去。

The doctor advised that he not smoke. 医生建议他不要抽烟。

注意

当insist表示“坚称，坚持认为”和suggest表示“表明，暗示”时，其后的从句中不用虚拟语气。

The look on his face suggested that he was quite satisfied with what I had done for him. 他的表情暗示出他对我为他所做的事非常满意。

He insisted that he was honest. 他坚持认为自己是诚实的。

（3）would rather用来表示主观愿望，其后的宾语从句也需用虚拟语气，谓语动词常用过去式。

I’ d rather you went tomorrow. 我宁愿你明天去。

Kate went by car and I’d rather she hadn’t. 凯特是坐汽车去的，我宁愿她不坐汽车去。

2. 虚拟语气在主语从句中的应用

（1）在某些表示愿望、请求、建议、命令等形容词之后的主语从句中，需用虚拟语气，其谓语形式为“（should）+动词原形”，其中should可以省略。这类形容词常见的有：necessary（必要的）, important（重要的）, essential（紧要的）, imperative（迫切的）, urgent（紧迫的）等。

It’s important that we（should）take good care of the patient.

重要的是我们要照顾好病人。

（2）在“It is desired（suggested, ordered, insisted, decided...）that...”主语从句中，常用虚拟语气，谓语形式为“（should）+动词原形”。

It is desired that this rule be brought to the attention of the staff.

希望这条规则引起全体职员的注意。

（3）在“It is+n.+主语从句”这一句型中，主语从句要用虚拟语气，此句型中的名词有两类：一类是表示建议、请求、命令等含有主观意向的动词的同源名词，如suggestion, proposal等；另一类是表示遗憾、惊奇、怀疑等主观看法的名词，如shame, pity等，其从句中的谓语动词形式为“（should）+动词原形”。

It is my proposal that he be sent to study abroad. 我建议派他去国外学习。

It was a pity that you couldn’t come. 你不能来，真是太可惜了。

3. 虚拟语气在同位语从句中的应用

同位语从句的先行词通常是表示说话人愿望、建议、要求、命令等的名词，其同位语从句需使用虚拟语气，谓语形式为“（should）+动词原形”。

The suggestion that students learn something practical is worth considering.

学生应该学习些实用知识的建议是值得考虑的。

考点3 特殊的虚拟语气

1. if only的虚拟语气

if only也可用于表示与事实相反的愿望，意为“若是……那该多好啊；真希望……”。若表示与现在事实相反，谓语动词应用过去式；如果表示与过去事实相反，应用过去完成时态。

If only I were as clever as you! 要是我像你一样聪明该多好啊！

If only you had not told Tom what I said, everything would have been all right.

要是你没有把我的话告诉汤姆就好了，那样就不会出什么问题了。

2. It is（high）time that...句型中的虚拟语气

It is（high）time that...意为“（早）该是做……的时间了”，后面的从句也需使用虚拟语气形式，即谓语动词要用过去式或用should加动词原形，此时should不可省略。

It is time that the children went to bed. 孩子们该睡觉了。

It is high time that we should set up a new plant in this country.

我们早该在这个国家设立新工厂了。

专项练习

1. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. We suggest that Henry is told about his condition as soon as possible.

2. His English is so poor. He mustn't be an English native speaker.

3. The teacher insisted that we must hand in our exercise before supper.

4. John's grade on the test is the highest in his class, so he should have studied last night.

5. I'm feeling much better now, so you mustn't call the doctor.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

6. If the whole operation _____（not plan）before hand, a great deal of time and money would have been lost.

7. Tom suggested that we _____（not hold）such a meeting, but Jenny insisted that it _____（be）of great importance.

8. The room is in a terrible mess; it can't _____（clean）.

9. George _____（can, go）too far. His coffee is still warm.

10. One of our rules is that every student _____ wear school uniform while at school.

11. —_____ you interrupt now? Can't you see I'm on the phone?

—Sorry sir, but it's urgent.

12. He _____ have completed his work; otherwise, he wouldn't be enjoying himself by seaside.

13. John went to the hospital alone. If he _____（told）me about it, I would have gone with him.

14. Had I known about this computer program, a huge amount of time and energy _____（save）.

15. —If the traffic hadn't been so heavy, I could have been back by 6 o'clock.

—What a pity! Tina _____（be）here to see you.

III. 单项选择。

16. —Shall I inform him of the change of the schedule right now?

—I am afraid you _____, in case he comes late for the meeting.

A. will

B. must

C. may

D. can

17. Mary’s score on the test is the highest in her class; she _____ have studied very hard.

A. may

B. should

C. must

D. ought to

18. You _____ her in her office last Friday; she’s been out of town for two weeks.

A. needn’t have seen

B. must have seen

C. might have seen

D. can’t have seen

19. You _____ all those calculations! We have a computer to do that sort of thing.

A. needn’t have done

B. shouldn’t have done

C. must not have done

D. cannot have done

20. Jane’s pale face suggested that she _____ ill, and her parents suggested that she _____ a medical examination.

A. be; should have

B. was; have

C. should be; had

D. was; has

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Tom: Hi, Mr.Smith. __**21**__ you give me a hand?

Mr. Smith: Of course. You needn't hesitate to ask me for help. What's the matter with you?

Tom: My mum is always complaining about my going back home late after school.

Mr. Smith: What do you usually do after school?

Tom: I usually go to the playground to play basketball. But I know that I __**22**__ go home first.

Mr. Smith: Why don't you go home directly?

Tom: My mother usually says, "Every student shall do their homework first after school, and that is a rule for all of you students." You see, if I did my homework first now, I couldn't have a rest and relax. I am so tired.

Mr. Smith: Both you and your mum are reasonable. As a mother, she believes that you __**23**__ never work too hard, while you think you need some time to have a rest. Does your mother know what you think?

Tom: No. Even if I had told her before, she wouldn't have understood it.

Mr. Smith: I don't think so. I think you should tell your mother what you think and she would understand you. Besides, you had better not hide your feelings from your mother and you __**24**__ as well learn to communicate with her.

Tom: Thank you for your advice. It is high time I __**25**__ （talk）with her.

Mr. Smith: I can't agree more.

B

My deskmate, Mary, treats me as if she __**26**__ （be）my sister. She is nice but fat. If she were not so fat, she would look like a super model. Last year, a doctor advised that she __**27**__ （eat）more vegetables and fruits. He also made a suggestion that she（should）work out regularly. Besides, he insisted that she（should）walk to school. If she had followed the doctor's advice, she would not be so fat now. In other words, if the doctor had persuaded her to do so, she would not have become overweight. This

morning, Mary's mother bought her a new dress. It was really nice. But after she tried it on, she couldn't help shouting, "If only I __**28**__ （be）a little thinner! How I wish I __**29**__ （not eat）so much junk food before!" Were I Mary, I would make a weight loss plan. If I became overweight in the future, I would do sports every day. Now it is high time she changed her lifestyle. Without a healthy lifestyle, she wouldn't be able to lose weight. I would rather she __**30**__ swimming with me, but she insists that water sports are not suitable for her. So it is necessary that she should walk to school.

Unit 7 名词性从句

语法精讲

在复合句中起名词作用的句子叫名词性从句（Nominal Clauses）。名词性从句的功能相当于名词词组，它在复合句中能担任主语、宾语、表语、同位语等，因此名词性从句又可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。所有的名词性从句的语序都是陈述句语序。

考点1 名词性从句的引导词

名词性从句的引导词可分为三类：

1. 连词

此类连词包括that，whether（是否），if（是否）， as if（好像，似乎），as though（好像，似乎）等。其中that只起连接作用，没有任何实际语义，也不充当句子成分，在宾语从句中可省略；whether与if 均为“是否”的意思，在引导宾语从句时if和whether可以互换，但在下列情况下，只能用whether，不能用if：

（1）引导主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句时。

Whether we will go to Shanghai has not been decided.

我们去不去上海还没有定。（whether引导主语从句）

What concerns him most is whether he can meet Miss Elizabeth.

他最关心的是能否见到伊丽莎白小姐。（whether引导表语从句）

He must answer the question whether he agrees with it or not.

他必须回答关于他是否同意（这件事）的提问。（whether引导同位语从句）

（2）从句作介词宾语时。

It depends on whether it will be fine tomorrow. 那得看明天是不是晴

天。

（3）直接与or not连用时。

I don’t know whether or not he will come. 我不知道他是不是会来。

（4）与不定式连用时。

I don’t know whether to go there at once. 我不知道是不是该立刻去那里。

2. 连接代词

此类连接代词包括what, whatever, who, whoever, whom, whose, which等。除了whose充当定语之外，其他在从句中充当主语、宾语或表语。

（1）what是一个十分重要的名词性从句引导词，它可引导主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句，但不用于引导同位语从句。它引导的名词性从句有两个意思：一是表示“什么”，带有疑问意味；二是表示“……所……的”，相当于一个先行词后接一个关系代词。

People have heard what the President has said; they are waiting to see what he will do.

人们已经听到了总统所说的；他们正等着看总统会做什么。

I don’t know what you want.（=I don’t know the thing that you want.）

我不知道你要什么。

（2）whatever, whoever, whichever 也可引导名词性从句，其含义分别为“所……的一切事或东西”、“任何……的人”、“……的任何人或物”。

Whatever he said was always right.（=Anything that he said was always right.）

他所说的往往都是对的。（引导主语从句）

Tell whoever you like—it makes no difference to me.

你愿意告诉谁就告诉谁吧，对我是无所谓的。

注意

whatever, whoever, whichever除了用于引导名词性从句外，还可用于引导状语从句，分别相当于no matter what, no matter who,

no matter which。

3. 连接副词

此类连接副词包括when, where, how, why等，在从句中作状语。

Why he did it will remain a puzzle forever. 他为什么那么做将永远是一个谜。

考点2 主语从句

（1）主语从句通常由that和whether或其他连接代词或连接副词连接。主语从句作主语，主句谓语动词用单数。

What I want to know is this. 我想知道的就是这一点。

Whether we'll hold a meeting is not decided. 我们是否要开一个会还未定。

what引导的主语从句，表示"……所……的（东西）"，在结构上等于一个名词加一个定语从句；whatever表示"所……的一切"；whoever表示"一切……的人"。

What he says（=Anything that he says）is not important. 他说的话并不重要。

Whatever was said here must be kept secret. 在这里说的一切必须保密。

（2）主语从句通常用it作形式主语。it作形式主语的that-从句有以下四种不同的搭配关系，其重要句型归纳如下：

① It+be+形容词+that -从句

It is necessary（important, natural, strange, etc.）that...

……是必要的（重要的、自然而然的、奇怪的……）

It is necessary that... 有必要……

It is important that... 重要的是……

It is obvious that... 很明显……

② It+be+-ed 分词+that-从句

It is suggested（requested, proposed, etc.）that... 据建议（要求、提议

等）……

It is believed that... 人们相信……

It is known to all that... 众所周知……

It has been decided that... 已决定……

③ It+be+名词+that-从句

It is a pity（a shame, no wonder, etc.）that... 很遗憾（羞愧、难怪等）……

It is common knowledge that... ……是常识

It is a surprise that... 令人惊奇的是……

It is a fact that... 事实是……

④ It+不及物动词+that-从句

It appears that... 似乎……

It happens that... 碰巧……

It occurred to me that... 我突然想起……

> 注意 由what, whatever, whoever引导的主语从句一般不用形式主语it。

考点3 宾语从句

宾语从句可以作及物动词、介词及形容词结构的宾语。宾语从句通常由连词that和whether/if、连接代词或连接副词引导。

1. 宾语从句的语序

宾语从句的语序是陈述句语序，即：连接代词/副词+主语+谓语+其他成分。

Could you tell me when the train will leave? 你能告诉我火车何时出发吗？

2. 宾语从句的时态

主句时态是一般现在时，从句时态根据实际情况使用。主句是过去时态，从句须用过去时态的某种形式。当宾语从句表示的是一个客观真

理或者事实时，即使主句是过去时，从句也用一般现在时态。

The headmaster hopes everything goes well. 校长希望一切进展顺利。

She was sorry that she hadn’t finished her work on time.

她为没有按时完成作业感到抱歉。

The teacher told his class that light travels faster than sound.

那位老师告诉他的学生光比声音传播的速度快。

3. 连接词that

that引导宾语从句在句中无实际语义，且不充当句子成分，多数情况下可以省略。但如果从句是并列句时，第二个分句前的that不可省。

He has told me（that）he will go to Shanghai tomorrow.

他已经告诉我他明天要去上海。

He said（that）you were too young to understand the matter and that he was asked not to tell you.他说你太小，还不懂这件事情，而且他也被要求不准告诉你。

> 注意
>
> ① 在demand, order, suggest, decide, insist, desire, request, command, doubt等表示要求、命令、建议、决定等语义的动词后，宾语从句要用虚拟语气，常用“（should）+动词原形”的形式。
>
> ② 当主句谓语动词是think, believe, suppose, expect等词，而宾语从句是否定含义时，常把否定转移至主句来表示。
>
> I don’t think it is right for him to treat you like that. 我认为他如此对你是不合适的。

4. 连接词whether和if

在宾语从句中whether与if可以互换使用，但在下列情况下，只能用whether：① 在带to的不定式前；② 在介词的后面；③ 直接与or not连用时。

5. 形式宾语it

宾语从句太长，可以用形式宾语it代替。

① 动词find, feel, consider, make, believe等后面有宾语补足语的时候，需要用it作形式宾语，而将that宾语从句后置。若宾语从句是wh-类，则不可用it代替。

I have made it a rule that I keep diaries every day. 我每天写日记成了习惯。

We all find it important that we（should）make a quick decision about this matter.

我们都认为对这件事马上做出决定很重要。

② enjoy, like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, appreciate等动词后接that从句，if 从句或when引导的从句，通常应先在动词后接it作形式宾语。

You can put it that it was arranged before. 你可以说这是以前安排的。

He hates it when people use his bike. 他讨厌别人用他的自行车。

I would appreciate it very much if you would help me with it.

如果你能帮助我做这事，我会十分感激。

考点4 表语从句

表语从句在句中作表语，位于主句中的系动词之后。除that, whether和疑问词外，as if, as though, because也可引导表语从句。

The question is whether she can speak English. 问题在于她是否会说英语。

That is what we need. 那正是我们所需要的。

It looked as if it was going to rain. 似乎要下雨了。

注意

① why与because 均可引导表语从句，但前者强调结果，后者强调原因。

I had a cold. That’s why I didn’t come. 我感冒了，所以我没有来。

I didn’t come. That’s because I had a cold. 我没有来，因为我感冒了。

② 主句的主语是reason时，表语从句要用that，不能用because。

The reason why we didn't go was that we were notified too late.

我们没有去的原因是我们得到通知太晚了。

考点5 同位语从句

1. 同位语从句的用法

同位语从句用于对前面的名词做进一步解释，说明名词的具体内容。同位语从句一般由that引导，但也可以由whether以及连接代词和连接副词引导。一般跟在名词fact, hope, idea, news, doubt, suggestion, information, opinion, decision, discovery, truth, promise, statement, problem, rule等名词后面。

The news that we are having a holiday tomorrow is not true. 我们明天放假的消息不实。

The question whether it is right or wrong depends on the result.

这个问题是对还是错要看结果。

Have you any idea what time it starts? 你知道什么时候开始吗?

注意

① 引导同位语从句的连词that通常不省略。

② 在某些名词demand, wish, suggestion, resolution等后面的同位语从句要用虚拟语气，谓语动词用"should+动词原形"的形式，should可省略。

The suggestion that the new rule（should）be adopted came from the chairman.

采纳新规则的建议是主席提出的。

③ 有时同位语从句可以和同位的名词分开。

The news got about that he had won a car in the lottery.

他中彩得了一辆汽车的消息传开了。

2. that引导的同位语从句和定语从句的区别

在同位语从句中，that只起连接主句和从句的作用，无意义，在从句中不充当句子成分，一般不可省略。在定语从句中，that指代先行词，在从句中不仅起连接作用，还充当某个句子成分，在作宾语时通常可省略。

They were all shocked at the news that Germany had declared war on Russia.

他们都对德国向俄国宣战的消息感到震惊。

（同位语从句，that只起引导作用，在句中不充当任何成分。）

They were all shocked at the news that was announced on the radio.

听到收音机里宣布的消息，他们都很震惊。

（定语从句，that在从句中作主语，若省略that，句子成分不完整。）

The news（that）we heard spread all over the school campus.

我们听到的消息传遍了校园。（定语从句）

The news that Mr. Li will be our new English teacher is true.

李老师将成为我们的新英语老师这个消息是真的。（同位语从句）

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. The reason why he was late was because he had taken a wrong bus.

2. He said that he couldn’t tell you right away and you wouldn’t understand.

3. I hate if you say such things in public.

4. He was interested in all what he had seen at the exhibition.

5. It is a pity she has made such a mistake.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

6. People were perhaps more honest a long time ago when life was very

different from _____ it is today.

7. Nobody knows _____ it will rain tomorrow. _____ it rains, we'll stay at home.

8. You are saying that everyone should be equal, and this is _____ I agree.

9. _____ made the school proud was _____ more than 90% of the students had been admitted to key universities.

10. ① _____ we know, the over-use of fossil fuels, such as coal and oil, has caused serious environmental problems.

② _____ is known that the over-use of fossil fuels, such as coal and oil, has caused serious environmental problems.

③ _____ we know is that the over-use of fossil fuels, such as coal and oil, has caused serious environmental problems.

11. It _____（report）that over 300 million people in China are suffering from nearsightedness.

12. ① The news _____ was told to me is that Tom would go abroad next year.

② The news _____ Tom would go abroad is told by him.

13. The suggestion that a new bridge _____（build）was accepted.

14. ① Anyone _____ gains the most points wins the competition.

② _____ gains the most points wins the competition.

15. It remains to be seen _____ it will do us harm or good.

III. 单项选择。

16. I just wonder _____ that makes him so excited.

A. why it does

B. what he does

C. how it is

D. what it is

17. With piles of work at hand, Jane doubts _____ she can pass the coming driving test.

A. whether

B. that

C. how

D. why

18. The most pleasant thing of the rainy season is _____ one can be entirely out of dust.

A. what

B. that

C. whether

D. why

19. The manager put forward a suggestion _____ we should have an assistant. There is too much work to do.

A. whether

B. that

C. which

D. what

20. It is generally considered unwise to give a child _____ he or she wants.

A. however

B. whatever

C. whichever

D. whenever

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

It was reported __**21**__ there was an accident at a corner of the Roman Street this morning. Fortunately, there was no person __**22**__ got injured in the accident. However, no one saw __**23**__ on earth happened then.

__**24**__ the police would do is to figure out __**25**__ will be responsible for the accident. They said it was difficult for them __**26**__（judge）who exactly should be to blame.

Perhaps the reason was __**27**__ the car driver was too tired to stop the car in time. __**28**__ was certain that the car driver stopped the car immediately. But he didn't admit the fact __**29**__ he was over-speed driving at the turning. The police doubted __**30**__ what he said was true and decided to make a further investigation.

Unit 8 状语和状语从句

语法精讲

状语修饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子，通常由副词、介词短语、动词不定式、分词、从句等充当。状语的位置比较灵活，可以位于句首、句末或句中。

Obviously, our grandparents were pleased to get our phone call.

显然，我们的爷爷、奶奶很愿意接我们的电话。（副词）

We worked hard, from sunrise to sunset.

我们努力工作，日出而作，日落而息。（介词短语）

To help my disabled aunt, I spend an hour working in her house every day.

为了帮助我残疾的姑妈，我每天花上一个小时在她家里帮忙。（不定式）

Seen from a distance, the farmhouse looked deserted.

从远处看，这座农舍似乎是荒废的。（过去分词）

It rained heavily, causing severe flooding in that city.

大雨滂沱，造成了那个城市洪水泛滥。（现在分词）

I know how to light a camp fire because I had done it before.

我知道如何生篝火，因为以前我做过。（原因状语从句）

状语从句（Adverbial Clauses）指用作状语、起副词作用的句子。它可以修饰谓语、非谓语动词、定语、状语或整个句子。状语从句一般由连词（从属连词）引导，也可以由词组引起。从句位于句首或句中时通常用逗号与主句隔开，位于句尾时可以不用逗号隔开。

A) 主句（，）连词＋状语从句

B) 连词＋状语从句，主句

He is absent today, because he is ill. 他今天缺席，因为他病了。

Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者，事竟成。

另外，状语从句有时放在主语和动词之间，造成分隔现象。

Anyone, no matter who, may point out our shortcoming.

任何人，不管是谁，都可能会指出我们的不足之处。

（主语anyone与动词may point out被状语从句no matter who分隔）

考点1 状语从句常见引导词

根据其作用可分为时间、地点、原因、条件、目的、结果、让步、方式和比较等从句。常用引导词如下表：

时间状语从句	连词	as/when/while; after; before; since; once; till/until; whenever; no sooner... than.../hardly... when...
	副词	immediately; directly
	名词短语	the moment; the minute; the second; each/every time; the day/year; next time; the first/second/last time; by the time
条件状语从句		if; unless; as/so long as; on condition that; suppose/supposed that; provided/providing that; in the event that
原因状语从句		because; as; since; now (that)
结果状语从句		so/such... that...
目的状语从句		so that; in order that; in case
让步状语从句		though; although; as; however; no matter...; 疑问词 + ever; whether... or not...
比较状语从句		than; as/so... as...; the more... the more...
方式状语从句		as; as if; as though
地点状语从句		where, wherever

1. when的用法

（1）when表示时间点和时间段。有时相当于as soon as/immediately/instantly/directly等词的意思。when用于固定结

构“hardly/scarcely... when...”，此时when 可换作before。注意：当把hardly/scarcely放句首时，句子需部分倒装。

We will start when the monitor comes. 班长一来，我们就出发。

I had hardly arrived home last night when it began to rain.=Hardly had I arrived home last night when it began to rain. 昨晚我一到家，就开始下雨了。

（2）when 有时可译为“如果……”，相当于if，引导条件状语从句。

Smog will be distant from us when everyone fights against pollution.

如果人人反对污染，雾霾就会远离我们。

（3）when可作并列连词，引导并列分句，意为“突然……”或“这时……”，表示一个动作“正在发生”“即将发生”“刚刚完成”时突然插入另一个动作。when相当于and just time或and just at that time,常用于下列三种句型：was/were doing... when...; was/were about to do（on the point of doing）... when...; had done... when...例如：

I was walking along the river when I heard a drowning boy crying for help.

我正沿着河边走，突然听到一个溺水儿童的呼救。

I was about to go out when an unexpected visitor came.

我正要出门，一位不速之客来访了。

We had just planted 100 trees when it began to rain.

我们刚刚栽完100棵树，就开始下雨了。

2. while的用法

while表示时间段，作并列连词，表示前后对比。while引导的让步状语从句多放在句首，相当于although，表示“尽管，虽然”。

There’s plenty of rain in the southeast, while there’s little in the northeast.

东南部雨量充足，而东北部则很少下雨。

While I understand what you say, I can’t agree with you.

虽然我理解你的意思，但我还是不能赞同你。

注意

① when引导的时间状语从句既可放在句首，也可放在句末；而while引导的让步状语从句一般放在句首，不放在句末；另外，也可以从意义上加以区分。

② while和when都可以引导时间状语从句，但应注意：while引导的时间状语从句中的谓语动词必须是延续性的动词；而when引导的时间状语从句中的谓语动词既可以是延续性动词，也可以是非延续性动词。当时间状语从句中的谓语动词是延续性动词时，while和when 可以互相替换。例如：

The bus had left when we arrived at the bus stop. 当我们到达车站时，公共汽车已经开走了。（arrive是非延续性动词，因此，此句中的when不能用while替换）

When/While we were having a meeting, our teacher came in. 我们正在开会时，老师走了进来。（have是延续性动词，因此，句中的when可以用while替换）

③ while引导的状语从句还可以表示“某个动作正在进行的同时，另一个动作也在进行之中”。例如：

While the teacher was speaking, the students were listening. 老师在讲课，学生们在听。

3. as的用法

（1）as与when, while都是引导时间状语从句的从属连词，含义都是“当……的时候”。as意为at the same time that“正当……；与……同时”，它兼指“时间点”和“时间段”，从句的动词既可是延续性动词，也可是非延续性动词，意为“一边……一边……”，“随着”。

The door bell rang as we were having breakfast. 正当我们吃早饭的时候，门铃响了。

As the time went on（=With the time going on）, the weather got worse and worse.

随着时间的推移，天气越来越糟。

（2）while意为during the time that“在……期间”，指一个“时间段”，不能表达“时间点”，从句的动词只限于延续性动词；when意为at the time that“在……时”，多指“时间点”。

Strike while the iron is hot. 趁热打铁。

It was snowing when he arrived at the construction site. 他到达工地时正在下雪。

（3）as可以引导让步状语从句。as与although（或though），however（或no matter how）等都可以引导让步状语从句，含义是“虽然，尽管”，但它们有区别：although语气稍正式些，可放在句首，也可放在句中，主句中不能再用but，但可以用yet；as所表达的语气较强，引导的让步状语从句用倒装语序；however引导让步状语从句时，它的后面可跟形容词或副词，也要用倒装语序。

Strange as it may seem, nobody was injured in the accident.

这次意外虽然很奇怪，却没有人受伤。

Young as he is, he knows everything. 尽管小，他什么都知道。

还可表达为：

Though he is young, he knows everything.

Young though he is, he knows everything.

Although he is young, he knows everything.

However young he is, he knows everything.

另外，though还可以作为副词，意为“可是，然而，不过；话虽这样说”，一般位于句尾。

I wish you had told me, though. 不过，我希望你曾告诉过我。

He said he would come, he didn’t, though. 他说他要来，可是他并没有来。

另外，as还可以引导原因状语从句。

As rain has fallen, the air is cooler. 因为下过雨，空气比较清爽。

4. so/such... that... 均可引导结果状语从句

该句型中的such是形容词，修饰名词；so是副词，修饰形容词或副词，具体的搭配形式是：“so+adj./adv.+that”，“so+adj.（+a/an）+n.+that”；“such（+a/an）（+adj.）+n.+that”。

He speaks so fast that no one can catch him. 他说话太快，无人听得明白。

He’s such a good person that we mustn’t blame him.

他是这么好的人，我们千万不要怪他。

There is so rapid an increase（=such a rapid increase）in population that a food shortage is caused. 人口增长如此迅速，以致造成了粮食短缺。

They are such fine teachers that we all hold them in great respect.

他们是非常好的老师，我们对他们极为尊敬。

It is such nice weather that I would like to go to the beach. 天气如此好，我想去海滩。

The country has so much coal that it can export large quantities. 那个国家的煤炭非常丰富，可以大量出口。（so与表示数量的代词many, few, much, little等连用已经形成固定搭配，不能换用such）

5. It be... since/before/when... 从句归纳

相似句型结构	注意事项及举例
It + be + 时间段 + since 从句	①“自从……已经有多长时间了” ② 主句用一般现在时态或现在完成时态；从句用一般过去时态。 ③ 从句动词是延续性动词，表示已有一段时间不做某事了，时间从动词持续的动作结束算起；从句动词是非延续性动词，表示做某事已经有一段时间了，时间从动作开始至今。 It is three years since she was in our class. 她离开我们班已经有三年了。 It is three years since she came to our class. 她来我们班已经有三年了。
It + be + 时间段 + before 从句	①“多长时间后才……” ② 主句用一般将来时态，从句用一般现在时；主句用一般过去时态，从句用一般过去时。 It will be years before we meet again. 要过几年之后我们才能再聚。 It was not long before he came back. 没过多久他就回来了。
It + be + 时间点 + when 从句	①“当……时候是几点” ② 主句用一般将来时态，从句用一般现在时；主句用一般过去时态，从句用一般过去时。 It will be 6:00 when we reach the village. 我们到达那个小山村时将是 6 点。 It was 6:00 when we reached the village. 我们到达那个小山村的时候，时间是 6 点。
It + be + 时间 + that 从句	① 强调句型。去掉 It be 和 that，可还原为完整句子。 It was on the day that we first met. 我们初次见面是在这一天。 ② 强调 until 引导时间状语时，用“It + be + (not) until + that 从句”。 It was not until my father came back that I went to bed. 直到我父亲回来，我才去睡觉。
It (This/That) + be + the + 序数词 + time + that 从句	①“是某人第几次做某事” ② that 用于时间状语从句，可以省略，等于 in/on/for/at + which，从句使用完成时态。 It was the first time that he had come to London. 那是他第一次来伦敦。

6. 其他连词（或副词、名词）

· after 在……之后

· before 在……之前

· since 自从……（引导时间状语从句，主句需使用完成时态）

· once 一旦……（也可用作副词，意为“曾经，一度”）

· whenever 无论何时，每当……

· immediately/directly 一……就……（相当于as soon as，个别语法学家已经赋予这类副词连词词性）

· the moment/minute 每当……；一……就……（相当于as soon as）

· each/every time 每当……

例如：

Where have you been since I last saw you? 自从我上次见到你以后，你到哪儿去了？

Once you understand this rule, you'll have no further difficulty.

一旦你明白了这条规则，就再也没有困难了。

Whenever I hear that song, it makes me think of you.

每当我听到那首歌，我就会想起你。

I came immediately/directly I got your message. 一收到你的消息，我就来了。

He said he'd phone you the moment he got home. 他说他一到家就会给你打电话。

I meet up with Julie every time I go to Washington.

每次我去华盛顿的时候，我都会见朱莉。

考点2 状语从句的时态和语气

状语从句主句和从句的时态要保持一致。注意下列情况：

1. “主将从现”的原则

在时间状语从句和条件状语从句中，主句是一般将来时/祈使句/含有情态动词原形，从句要使用一般现在时态。但will在表示意愿时，可用于上述状语从句。

I' ll tell him the good news as soon as he comes back tomorrow.

他明天一回来我就会告诉他这个好消息。

Go on until you reach the bridge. 继续前行，直至你走到桥边。

If you work hard, you can pass the examination. 如果你努力学习，你就能通过考试。

If you will wait, I'll go and ask the manager. 如果你愿意等，我就去问问经理。

2. No sooner... than.../hardly（scarcely）... when... 句型的时态问题

No sooner... than.../hardly（scarcely）... when...表示“一……，就……”，引导时间状语从句，主句须用过去完成时，从句用一般过去时。No sooner/hardly（scarcely）位于句首时，主句需倒装。

He had no sooner been there than I told him about it. 他一来，我就告诉他了。

No sooner had he been here than I told him about it. 他一来，我就告诉他了。

3. as if（though）引导的方式状语从句的时态和语气问题

as if（though）引导方式状语从句，若所述情况可能性小，谓语动词用虚拟语气，时态在原基础上向过去退一步。若从句所述情况可能实现，则用陈述语气。

He speaks to me loudly as if I were deaf. 他大声冲我说话，好像我是个聋子。（实际不是）

It is blowing hard as if it is going to rain. 风很大，好像要下雨了。（真要下雨）

4. if引导的条件状语从句的时态和语气问题

if引导的条件状语从句，表示在某种条件下某事很可能发生。if还可以引导虚拟条件句，表示不可实现的条件，从句中多用一般过去时或过去完成时。

If I had enough money, I should（would）buy the car.

如果我有足够的钱，我就会买下这辆车。（事实上现在钱不够）

If I had got up earlier I should（would）have met her.

如果我起床早一些的话，我就会遇见她了。（事实上我起床晚了）

If he would come here tomorrow, I should（would）talk to him.

如果他明天来这里的话，我就会和他谈一谈。（事实上他明天来的可能性极小）

考点3 状语从句的省略

状语从句同时具备下列两个条件：①主句和从句的主语一致，或从句主语为it；②从句主要动词是be的某种形式，从句中的主语和be动词

常可省略，这样使得语言更加简洁明了。

状语从句的省略常包含如下结构：

（1）连词+名词。

He acts as if（he is）a fool. 他表现得就好像是个傻子一样。

（2）连词+形容词。

You must attend the meeting unless（it is）inconvenient to you.

除非情况对你来说不方便,否则你必须出席这次会议。

Work hard when（you are）young, or you'll regret.

趁年轻要努力学习，要不然你会后悔的。

（3）连词+现在分词。

He fell asleep while（he was）doing his homework. 他在做作业的时候睡着了。

（4）连词+过去分词。

If（it was）untreated, it would produce a powerful poison that would kill the patient.

如果不处理它，它将产生一种导致该病人死亡的烈性毒物。

Though（they were）tired, they went on working. 虽然他们累了，但他们仍继续工作。

（5）连词+介词短语。

While（I was）at college, I began to know him, a strange but able student.

我上大学时开始认识他的，他是一个奇怪但有能力的学生。

（6）连词+不定式。

The patient opened his mouth as if（he was）to speak. 病人张开嘴巴好像要说什么。

You shouldn't come to his party unless（you were）invited.

除非你被邀请，否则你不应该来参加他的派对。

考点4 状语从句和状语的相互转换

1. 状语从句转换为分词短语

状语从句主句和从句一致时，转换为分词短语。

After he turned off the TV, he went out of the room.

→Having turned off the TV, he went out of the room. 他关闭电视机后走出了房间。

When the city is seen from the mountain, it looks much more beautiful.

→Seen from the mountain, the city looks much more beautiful.

从山上看，这座城市看起来更漂亮。

2. 状语从句转换为独立主格结构

状语从句主句和从句不一致，转换为独立主格结构。

If weather permits, we'll have the meeting in the open air.

→（With）Weather permitting, we'll have the meeting in the open air.

如果天气允许，我们将在室外召开这次会议。

3. 状语从句转换为介词短语

由after/before/since/as soon as等引导的时间状语从句，可改为after/before/since/on+动名词短语结构。当主从句主语一致时，可使用动名词的复合结构。

Before he dived into the lake, he made a deep breath.

→Before diving into the lake, he made a deep breath.

在跳入湖中之前，他深深地吸了一口气。

可以用来代替状语从句的常见介词短语有：because of/at the age of/in spite of/as a result of等。

He is absent today because he is ill

→He is absent today because of illness. 他今天缺席是因为生病了。

4. 状语从句转换为动词不定式短语

状语从句还可以根据情况转换为不定式短语。

He is so strong that he can lift the heavy stone.

→He is strong enough to lift the heavy stone. 他很强壮，足以搬动这块重石。

He was so weak that he couldn’t go a step further.

→He was too weak to go a step further. 他太虚弱了，无法再挪动一步。

He stood in the front of the classroom in order that he could see the picture clearly.

→He stood in the front of the classroom in order to（so as to/to）see the picture clearly.

他站在教室前面，以便能清楚地看到图片。

注意

主语和状语的逻辑主语要保持一致性。下列5个句子都是错误的，在书面表达中应当避免：

At the age of five, his father died.

To improve your English, reading is necessary.

Being a fine day, we went out for a play.

While waiting for the bus, my wallet missed.

Giving more time, I can do it better.

上述句子的正确表达应当是：

When he was at the age of five, his father died.

To improve your English, you should read a lot.

It being a fine day, we went out for a play.

While waiting for the bus, I lost my wallet.

Given more time, I can do it better.

个别短语如generally speaking（一般来说）、strictly speaking（严格地说）、judging from...（依据……判断）、to tell you the truth（说实话），作为插入语使用，不受主语和状语的逻辑主语一致的限制。

To tell you the truth, your conclusion sounds strange.

告诉你实话，你的结论听起来很奇怪。

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. Because I was ill for six months, so I lost my job.

2. My father was watching TV while I came back home last night.

3. If possibly, he wanted proof before he would believe something.

4. The sports meet was put off because the heavy rain.

5. He made such many mistakes in his homework that the teacher made him do it again.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

6. Wherever you work, you _____（gain）much valuable experience as long as you are willing to work.

7. ① When _____（compare）different cultures, we often only pay attention to the differences without noticing the many similarities.

② When _____（compare）with most natural changes, that the temperature of the earth rose about one degree Fahrenheit during the 20th century is quite shocking.

8. ① As time _____（go）by, the days became longer and longer.

② With time _____（go）by, the days became longer and longer.

9. ① It was five o'clock _____ we arrived at the small mountain village.

② It was at five o'clock _____ we arrived at the small mountain village.

10. It was long _____ they escaped from the prison.

III. 单项选择。

11. I really enjoy listening to music _____ it helps me relax and takes my mind away from other cares of the day.

A. because

B. before

C. unless

D. until

12. _____ the average age of the population increases, there are more and more senior citizens to care for.

A. Unless

B. Until

C. As

D. While

13. _____ online shopping has changed our life, not all of its effects have been positive.

A. Since

B. After

C. While

D. Unless

14. We'll have to finish the job, _____.

A. long it takes however

B. it takes however long

C. long however it takes

D. however long it takes

15. _____ your composition carefully, some spelling mistakes can be avoided.

A. Having checked

B. Check

C. If you check

D. To check

16. John thinks it won't be long _____ he is ready for his new job.

A. when

B. after

C. before

D. since

17. _____ grades you get in this exam, you should never lose heart.

A. No matter how

B. What

C. No matter what

D. Which

18. _____ with the size of the whole universe, even the biggest star we can observe doesn’t seem big at all.

A. When compared

B. Compare

C. While comparing

D. Comparing

19. _____ difficult the task is, we are determined to finish it in time.

A. As

B. Whenever

C. However

D. How

20. _____ in the street, a terrible car accident happened, resulting in three deaths.

A. While walking

B. Walk

C. Walking

D. When I was walking

IV. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

My favorite teacher is my English teacher Mr. Li. I think him nice and

friendly the first time I met him. I like him, __**21**__ I think he is the best teacher in the world.

I didn't realize how special Mr. Li was __**22**__ I became an English teacher. While __**23**__ （teach）English, I can remember all the good time I spent in our school. Every __**24**__ I visit my school, I can think of him.

Ever since I entered high school, he pushed me hard in my English study. He would train me first before he set me a task. Much __**25**__ I respected him, I didn't agree with his opinions on this subject. __**26**__ English was of great help, I didn't think it was a good idea to spend too much time on it. At the beginning, learning English seemed __**27**__ difficult that I wanted to give up without even trying. __**28**__ hard he tried, he could not change my mind.

At that time he always encouraged us that, no matter __**29**__ we did, we should try our best to do it well. In his opinion, as long as we kept on trying, we would surely succeed. Therefore, __**30**__ he saw someone in need of help, he would spare no effort to help him.

Thanks to Mr. Li's help, I made great progress in English and became an English teacher. I want to be a teacher like Mr. Li.

Unit 9 定语和定语从句

语法精讲

定语：由单词、短语或从句对名（代）词修饰和限制，该名（代）词称为中心词。定语一般前置，短语和从句作定语要后置，翻译成“……的”。除了形容词，名词、数词、非谓语动词（短语）、介词短语也可以作定语。

a beautiful girl（形容词作前置定语）一个美丽的女孩

a girl in white（介词短语作后置定语）一个穿白色衣服的女孩

a girl who is singing（定语从句，a girl为先行词）一个正唱歌的女孩

定语从句：用来说明主句中某一名词或代词（有时也可说明整个主句或主句中的一部分）而起定语作用的句子称为定语从句。定语从句也称为形容词性从句。

定语从句分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句两种。

限制性定语从句是先行词不可缺少的部分，去掉从句后，主句意思往往不明确。

A man who doesn’t learn from others can’t achieve much. 一个不向别人学习的人是不会有多少成就的。（A man被限定后，指一类特定的人，此时定语从句是不能去掉的，否则主句就失去意义，含义不清，甚至让人感到莫名其妙。）

非限制性定语从句则不然，它只对所修饰的词做进一步的说明，去掉之后并不影响主句的含义。在形式上，非限制性定语从句与主句之间通常用逗号隔开。

Finally we visited the Three Gorges Dam, which is the greatest key water control project in the world at present. 最后，我们参观了长江三峡大坝，它是目前世界上最大的水利枢纽工程。（该句若去掉从句，主句部分的含义仍然完整。）

另外，非限制性定语从句还能将整个主句作为先行词，对其进行修饰，这时从句谓语动词要用第三人称单数。

The traffic of this city is quite bad, which is known to everyone.

这座城市的交通很糟糕，这一点大家都知道。

考点1 定语从句的常见引导词

定语从句中的引导词称为关系词，分为关系代词和关系副词。

引导词 \ 功能和作用		替代（人、物）	用于（限制 / 非限制）	在定语从句中所作成分
关系代词	that	人或物	限制	主、宾、表
	which	事物	限制或非限制性	主、宾、表
	who	人	限制或非限制性	主、宾、表
关系代词	whom	人	限制或非限制性	宾、表
	whose	人或物	限制或非限制性	定语
	as	人或物	限制或非限制性	主、宾、表
关系副词	when	时间	限制或非限制性	时间状语
	where	地点	限制或非限制性	地点状语
	why	原因	限制	原因状语

注意

① 定语从句中的谓语动词要与先行词的人称和数保持一致。

Tom is one of the boys who are from the USA. 汤姆是众多来自美国的男孩中的一个。

Tom is the only boy that is from the USA. 汤姆是唯一从美国来的男孩。

② that只引导限制性定语从句。

③ what不能引导定语从句。

④ 在限制性定语从句中，当关系代词who, whom, which和that用作动词宾语或介词宾语（介词位于句末）时，可以省略。关系词在非限制性定语从句中不能省略。

Is there anything（that）you wanted? 你想要什么东西吗？

Who is the man, whom you were talking to? 刚才和你讲话的人是谁？

考点2 关系代词that, which, who, whom, whose, as引导的定语从句

关系代词主要有that, who, whom, whose, which, as等，其中who和whom只用于指人，which和as只用于指事物，whose和that既可用于指人也可用于指物，它们在定语从句中可用作主语、宾语、表语或定语。

1. 关系代词who/whom

关系代词who/whom指人，在定语从句中分别作主语和宾语。

The man who lives in that house is my uncle.

住在那座房子里的人是我叔叔。（who指人，在从句中作主语）

The girl（whom）the teacher often praises is our monitor.

老师经常表扬的那个女孩是我们的班长。

Peter, whom you met in London, is now back in Paris.

彼得现在回巴黎了，你在伦敦见过他。

注意

关系代词whom 在口语或非正式文体中常可用who 来代替。

The man（whom/who）you met just now is my old friend.

你刚才见到的那位男士是我的老朋友。

2. 关系代词which

关系代词which 指物，在定语从句中作主语或宾语。

The book which cost me a lot of money is very interesting.

我花很多钱买来的那本书很有趣。

My sister likes the gift（which）I gave her yesterday. 妹妹喜欢我昨天送她的礼物。

European football is played in 80 countries, which makes it one of the

most popular sports in the world. 有80个国家在踢欧式足球，这使它成为全世界最流行的体育运动之一。

3. 关系代词that

关系代词that 指人时，相当于who 或whom；指物时，相当于which，在定语从句中作主语或宾语。

The bag that（=which）lies on the ground is hers. 地上的那个包是她的。

The old man that（=whom/who）I visited yesterday is my teacher.

我昨天拜访的那位老人是我的老师。

4. 关系代词whose

关系代词whose通常指人，也可指物，在定语从句中作定语。

I visited a scientist whose name is known all over the country.

我拜访了一位全国知名的科学家。

I once lived in the house whose roof has fallen in.

我曾经住在那幢屋顶已经倒塌了的房子里。

> 注意
>
> 指人或物时，常用of whom/of which结构来代替：
>
> Do you know the doctor, whose son is a doctor too?
>
> =Do you know the doctor, the son of whom/of whom the son is a doctor too?
>
> 你认识那位医生吗？他的儿子也是一名医生。
>
> There is a church, whose door faces south.
>
> =There is a church, the door of which/of which the door faces south.
>
> 有一座教堂，窗户朝南。

5. as引导的定语从句

（1）as引导的限制性定语从句：

as引导限制性定语从句时，它通常要与such, the same, as搭配，即构成such... as..., the same... as..., as... as... 这样的固定搭配，同时as在从句中充当一定的句子成分。

He is not such a fool as he looks. 他并不像看上去那样愚蠢。

He rides as expensive a bike as he can afford. 他骑一辆他买得起的最贵的自行车。

I have bought the same watch as you have. 我买了一块和你一样的手表。

（我的手表和你的手表很像，但不是同一块，故由as引导定语从句。）

This is the same watch that I lost. 这就是我丢的那块手表。

（这块手表和我丢的手表是同一块，故由that引导定语从句。）

（2）as引导的非限制性定语从句

as引导非限制性定语从句时，代替整个主句，对其进行说明，通常用于as we all know, as it is known, as is known to all, as it is, as is said above, as always mentioned above, as is usual, as is often the case, as is reported in the newspaper等句式中。as在非限制性定语从句中作主语、表语或宾语，且引出的从句位置比较灵活，可位于句首或句末，也可置于主句中间。通常均由逗号将其与主句隔开。as有“正如……，就像……”之意。

As is known to the United States, Mark Twain is a great writer.

美国人都知道，马克·吐温是一位伟大的作家。（as在从句中作主语）

He is absorbed in work, as he often was.

他正在全神贯注地工作，他过去经常这样。（as在从句中作表语）

As we all know, the earth is round.

众所周知，地球是圆的。（as在从句中作宾语）

考点3 关系副词引导的定语从句

关系副词主要有when, where和why，其中when表示时间，where表示地点，why表示原因，它们在定语从句中均用作状语。

1. 关系副词when/where

关系副词when/where 既可引导限制性定语从句，又可引导非限制性定语从句。先行词是时间或地点名词，在从句中充当时间状语或地点状语，相当于“介词+which”。

October 1, 1949 was the day when（=on which）the People’s Republic of China was founded. 1949年10月1日是中华人民共和国成立的日子。（限制性定语从句）

This is the school where（=in which）I studied a few years ago.

这就是我几年前读书的学校。

I will never forget the day, when（=on which）I joined the Party.

我入党的那一天，我永远不会忘记。（非限制性定语从句）

Let’s go to the concert, where（=in which）you will find much fun.

我们去听音乐演唱会吧，在那里你会找到很大的乐趣。

where有时还可用于抽象名词后引导定语从句。常见此类抽象名词有point, degree, stage, position, case, condition等。

We have reached a point where a change is needed. 我们到了必须要改变的地步。

He got into a situation where it is hard to decide what is right and wrong.

他陷入一种难以分辨是非的局面。

I don’t want a job where I’m chained to a desk all day.

我不想找一份整天坐办公桌前的工作。

2. 关系副词why

关系副词why只能引导限制性定语从句，先行词只有reason一词，在从句中充当原因状语，相当于for+which。

Do you know the reason why（=for which）he is not here now?

你知道他还没有来这儿的原因吗？

> 注意
>
> 用关系代词还是关系副词引导定语从句主要看关系词在定语

从句中的作用（即所担当的成分）。试比较：

I know a place where we can have a picnic. 我知道一个我们可以野炊的地方。

I know a place which/that is famous for its beautiful natural scenery.

我知道一个以自然景色优美而闻名的地方。

I will never forget the days when we spent our holidays together.

我永远忘不了我们一起度假的日子。

I will never forget the days that/which we spent together.

我永远忘不了我们一起度过的日子。

This is the reason why he was dismissed. 这就是他被解雇的原因。

This is the reason that/which he explained to me for his not attending the meeting.

这就是他向我解释的他没有参加会议的原因。

考点4 关系代词which和that的区别

在先行词是事物的限制性定语从句中，that和which一般可互换。关系代词that只引导限制性定语从句，不能引导非限制性定语从句。

1. 在限制性定语从句中只能用that，不能用which作关系代词的情况

（1）当先行词是everything, anything, nothing, all, none, few, little, some等不定代词时，或当先行词被every, any, all, some, no, little, few, much等词修饰时。

All that can be done has been done. 所有能做的都做了。

（2）先行词被序数词、形容词最高级、the only, the very, the last等词修饰时。

The first place that they visited in London was the Big Ben.

在伦敦他们参观的第一个地方是大本钟。

It’s the most important task that should be finished soon.

这是需要马上完成的最重要的任务。

（3）先行词既有人又有物时。

They talked about the persons and things that they remembered at school.

他们谈论了他们所能记起的在校时的人和事。

（4）当先行词前面有who, which等疑问代词时，为避免混淆，不用which而用that。

Who is the man that is standing by the gate? 站在门口的那个人是谁?

2. 只用which，不能用that作关系代词的情况

（1）在非限制性定语从句中只能使用关系代词which，不能使用关系代词that。

He made another wonderful theory discovery, which I think is of great importance to science. 他做出了另外一项精彩的发现，我认为这一发现具有重要的科学意义。

（2）在“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句中，只能使用关系词which，不能使用that。

The house in which we live is very large. 我们住的房子非常大。

> 注意
>
> 如果介词不放在关系代词之前，which就可换为that。
>
> This is the question about which we've had so much discussion.=This is the question which/that we've had so much discussion about. 这就是我们已经多次讨论过的问题。

考点5 “介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句

关系代词在定语从句中作介词宾语时，从句常常由“介词+关系代词”引出。

The school in which he once studied is very famous. =The school（which/that）he once studied in is very famous. 他曾经就读过的学校很出名。

注意

（1）定语从句中某些含有介词的短语动词一般介词仍放在短语动词的后面，此类动词短语有：look for, look after, take care of等。

This is the watch（which/that）I am looking for. 这是我正在寻找的手表。

This is the watch for which I am looking.（×）

（2）关系代词在定语从句中作介词的宾语且介词前置时，只能用which或whom, 不可用who, that。

The man with whom you talked just now is my neighbour.

你刚才跟他谈话的那个人是我的邻居。

The plane in which we flew to Canada was really comfortable.

我们去加拿大所乘坐的飞机很舒服。

（3）“介词+关系代词”前还可有some, any, none, all, both, neither, many, most, each, few等代词或者数词。

There are forty students in our class in all, most of whom are from big cities.

我们班总共有40个学生，大多数来自大城市。

Up to now, he has written ten novels, three of which are about country life.

迄今为止，他写了10部小说，其中3部是关于农村生活的。

（4）以the way为先行词的限制性定语从句通常由in which或that引导，而且通常可以省略。

The way（that/in which）he answered the questions was surprising.

他回答这些问题的方式令人惊讶。

考点6 定语从句的转换

定语从句可以转换为形容词（短语）、非谓语动词（短语）、介词

短语等形式。

（1）非限制性定语从句转化为两个简单句、并列句、独立主格或同位语形式。

I found many flowers in the garden, most of which were red.→

① I found many flowers in the garden; most of them were red.（两个简单句）

② I found many flowers in the garden. Most of them were red.（两个简单句）

③ I found many flowers in the garden, and most of them were red.（并列句）

④ I found many flowers in the garden and most of them were red.（并列句）

⑤ I found many flowers in the garden, most of them red.（独立主格）

我在花园里看到了很多花儿，大部分都是红色的。

We finally reached London, which was the end of our journey.→

We finally reached London, the end of our journey.（同位语）

我们抵达了伦敦——我们行程的终点。

（2）限制性定语从句可以转化成含有形容词、非谓语动词或介词的短语。

1）在定语从句中，如果谓语动词是主动语态，就用现在分词短语替换；如果是被动语态，可用过去分词替换；如果是单个动词要放在中心词之前，动词短语要后置。

① The girl who is crying is my sister.→

The crying girl is my sister. 正在哭泣的女孩是我的妹妹。

② The girl who is crying behind the tree is my sister.→

The girl crying behind the tree is my sister. 在树后哭泣的女孩是我的妹妹。

③ This is a story which was written by Charles Dickens.→

This is a story written by Charles Dickens. 这是由查尔斯·狄更斯创作的一个故事。

④ The man who owns that car will be fined for illegal parking.→

The man owning that car will be fined for illegal parking.

那辆车的车主将会因为违章停车而被罚款。

2）在定语从句中，如果含有情态动词或先行词前有序数词first, last, next等，可以将其转化为含有不定式作定语的简单句。

① You need someone who can look after you.→

You need someone to look after you. 你需要有人来照顾。

② Mary was the first student who arrived at the square.→

Mary was the first student to arrive at the square. 玛丽是最先到达广场的学生。

3）在定语从句中，如果谓语动词含有be的形式，表语是介词短语、形容词（短语），在不影响理解的前提下，可以转化成上述短语作定语的简单句。

① The girl who is behind the tree is my sister.→

The girl behind the tree is my sister. 树后面的那个女孩是我的妹妹。

② Soldiers must be people who are not afraid of death.→

Soldiers must be people not afraid of death. 军人必须是不畏牺牲的人。

专项练习

Ⅰ. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. The citizens welcomed the new mayor, most of who are workers.

2. Who is the soldier gave us a speech last month?

3. All what she could do was to go to church.

4. I, who is in Australia, feel proud of being a Chinese.

5. The girl failed in the exam, that made us disappointed.

6. We got on the school bus and which took us straight to the People’s Park.

7. He built a transparent wall through that he could observe what was

going on.

8. This is the only English-Chinese dictionary which I could find in the shop.

9. I don’t like the way which he spoke to his teacher.

10. Don’t leave the medicine bottle which the little boy can reach it.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

11. I live next door to a couple _____ children often make a lot of noise.

12. We will put off the picnic in the park until next week, _____ the weather may be better.

13. Scientists have advanced many theories about why human beings cry tears, none of _____ has been proved.

14. ① He is the only one of the teachers who _____（know）French in our school.

② This is one of the rooms that _____（be）free now.

15. We’d better fix a date _____ which we will practice speaking English next week.

16. Earthquake is a sudden shaking of the earth’s surface _____ may cause great damage.

17. ① _____ is well known to all, China has the largest population in the world.

② He didn’t win the championship, _____ I hadn’t expected.

18. That Peter will marry Alice, _____ has not been announced yet, has spread around.

19. ① The novel which _____（give）by the professor yesterday mainly discusses the development of Chinese economy.

② The novel _____（give）by the professor yesterday mainly discusses the development of Chinese economy.

20. ① On Sundays there were a lot of children playing in the park, _____ parents seated together joking.

② On Sundays there were a lot of children playing in the park, _____ parents were seated together joking.

III. 单项选择。

21. The 11th of September is a special date, _____, I think, that will be remembered by the Americans forever.

A. what

B. it

C. which

D. one

22. The factory produced many famous cars, none of _____ shipped to foreign countries.

A. them

B. which

C. it

D. what

23. It wasn't such a good present _____ my cousin had promised me.

A. that

B. as

C. which

D. what

24. ① _____ leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.

② _____ who leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.

③ _____ who leave the room last ought to turn off the lights.

A. Anyone

B. Who

C. Those

D. Whoever

25. This is the only way _____ you can find. By the way, I don't like

the way _____ he spoke to his mother.

A. that; 不填

B. in which; 不填

C. which; which

D. which; that

26. ① Is this museum _____ they visited last month?

② The teacher tells us that _____ cleans the blackboard is to be praised.

A. that

B. the one

C. which

D. the one who

27. ① It was eleven o’clock _____ they went out of the cinema.

② It was at eleven o’clock _____ they went out of the cinema.

A. which

B. that

C. when

D. on which

28. —Where did you get to know her?

—It was on the farm _____ we worked.

A. that

B. there

C. which

D. where

29. Edward is the boy _____ I think scored the winning points for the basketball team.

A. whom

B. which

C. what

D. who

30. I shall never forget those years _____ I lived in the country with farmers, _____ has a great effect on my life.

A. that; which

B. when; which

C. which; that

D. when; who

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

Scientists __**31**__ study primates（灵长类）say that we are moving towards a time __**32**__ species like gorillas（大猩猩）will no longer be found in the wild.

Jo Setchell is a primatologist at Durham University in Britain. She studies primates, the group of mammals __**33**__ includes gorillas, chimps and monkeys. And, of course, humans.

In all, there are an estimated 600 different species of primates. They include the little creature called the mouse lemur（鼠狐猴）, __**34**__ body is only about six centimeters long. Then, there is the largest of the species, the gorilla, __**35**__ weighs up to 250 kilograms.

Primates face one common threat: loss of habitat, the places in nature __**36**__ they live. Primatologists like Setchell say human activity is to blame.

More than half of all primate species are grouped in four countries: Brazil, Indonesia, Madagascar and the Democratic Republic of Congo.

Paul Garber says each of these countries is working to help protect the primates in their areas, __**37**__ there is neither the funds, community support nor in-country expertise to address their conservation problems.

Madagascar is a good example of these problems, he says. It is home to over 100 primate species, almost all of __**38**__ live nowhere else. And 94 percent of them are endangered. Ninety percent of the original forests of Madagascar have been cut down, Garber says.

Neither Garber nor Setchell have any easy answers about how to stop

this road to extinction.

"We knew that primates were in trouble, but I think even for those of us __**39**__ work in primate conservation, it was still shocking to discover quite what the scale of the problem is."

__**40**__ the scientists know, the clearest way is to slow human activity in primates' habitats. The decrease is reversible if humans make primate and habitat conservation a top concern.

Unit 10 主谓一致和特殊句式（强调、倒装、省略及其他）

语法精讲

一、主谓一致

与汉语不同，英文句子存在主谓一致的问题。主谓一致即主语和谓语在“人称”和“数”方面的一致关系。主谓一致主要遵循语法一致、意义一致、临近三个原则。

考点1 语法一致原则

所谓“语法一致原则”即谓语动词和主语在单复数形式上保持一致。也就是说，如果主语为复数，谓语动词（在一般现在时中）用动词原形，若谓语中含有be动词，则用其复数are或were，若谓语中含有助动词have，则不应使用其单数形式has，反之，如果主语为单数，谓语动词（在一般现在时中）用第三人称单数形式，或根据时态选用单数形式的be动词am, is或was，助动词选用has。

1. 动名词（短语）、不定式（短语）或者主语从句作主语时，谓语一般用单数

To see is to believe. 百闻不如一见。

Watching basketball games has become my hobby. 观看篮球比赛成了我的业余爱好。

Whether she will go abroad or not is not decided. 她是否要出国尚未决定。

2. 由and或both... and...连接的并列主语，谓语动词一般用复数形式

Jack and Henry are best friends. 杰克和亨利是最好的朋友。

Both Mary and Linda were satisfied with the new tutor.

玛丽和琳达都对这位新家教老师感到满意。

3. 被as well as, with, along with, like, together with等短语修饰的主语的主谓一致

由as well as, with, along with, like, together with, rather than, except, but, including, accompanied by, plus, besides, in addition to, no less than等引起的结构跟在主语后面，不能看作并列主语，该主语不受这些短语引导的插入语的影响，主语如果是单数，其谓语动词仍然用单数形式，主语为复数，谓语动词使用复数形式。

Mr. White, as well as his wife and children, has gone to London last Friday.

上周五，怀特先生及其夫人和孩子去了伦敦。

The film star, accompanied by his three assistants, was seen to enter the hotel.

有人看见这位电影明星在其三位助理的陪同下进入了这家宾馆。

The parents, together with their son, are about to leave for Shanghai.

这对父母和他们的儿子要前往上海。

4. 主语含义上虽为复数，但谓语仍用单数形式的情况

有些主语被many a, more than one, each, every或no修饰，虽为复数意义，谓语仍用单数；and连接的主语分别被many a, more than one, each, every或no等修饰时，谓语动词也用单数形式（但复数主语与each连用时，应不受each的影响，谓语动词仍用复数形式）。

Many a student is going to take part in the English contest.

有许多学生要参加这项英语竞赛。

Every boy and every girl has the right to receive education in that country.

在那个国家，每个男孩和女孩都有权利接受教育。

The old workers and the young ones each have their own tools.

老工人和年轻工人每人都有自己的工具。

5. 某些不定代词作主语，谓语动词一般用单数形式

此类不定代词有：either, neither, each, one, the other, another, somebody, someone, something, anyone, anything, anybody, everyone, everything, everybody, no one, nothing, nobody等。

Everything around us is matter. 我们周围的所有东西都是物质。

Someone has let the news out. 有人把这个消息泄露了出去。

考点2 意义一致原则

意义一致原则是指谓语动词的数与主语的意义一致（有时主语在形式上为单数，但意义上却为复数；有时形式为复数，但意义为单数）。

1. 时间、距离、重量、金钱等复数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式

表示时间、距离、重量、金钱等的复数名词作主语时，应视为一个整体概念，谓语动词使用单数形式。

Seven days is enough for completing this task. 七天时间完成这项任务已经足够了。

1000 dollars was a lot of money for me at that time.

当时1000美元对我来说是很大一笔钱。

2. 一些集体名词作主语时，谓语动词的单复数要取决于集体名词的含义

class, family, team, group, crew, government, enemy, company, party, public, audience等集体名词既可以表示整体意义，又可以表示一个个成员，它们充当句子主语时，谓语动词单复数取决于其所指代的含义，即视作整体，谓语动词用单数，若视为具体成员，则谓语动词用复数。

My family is a big one. 我家是一个大家庭。

My family are fond of going out for a walk after supper. 我们一家人喜欢晚饭后出去散步。

3. 学科或专有名词等的复数形式表示单数概念时，其谓语动词用单数形式

Physics is one of my favorite subjects. 物理是我最喜爱的学科之一。

I think Arabian Nights is a fantastic classic that should be read by anyone who has the time and patience. 我认为《一千零一夜》是一个极好的经典，任何有时间和耐心的人都应该读一读。

4. 有些名词形式上是复数，而意义上却是单数（如news，means等），作主语时，谓语动词用单数

The news is spreading quickly. 消息正在迅速传播。

5. 由对称部分构成的物品的单词作主语时的主谓一致的情况

某些由两个对称部分构成的物品的英文单词一般以复数形式出现，比如shoes, trousers, clothes, glasses（眼镜）, scissors（剪刀）, chopsticks（筷子）, compasses（圆规）等，它们作主语时，谓语动词一般用复数形式，但是，如果这些词被a pair of, a kind of, a series of等短语修饰时，谓语动词应用单数形式。

The shoes fit me perfectly. 这双鞋非常适合我。

That pair of glasses was missing last week. 上周那副眼镜找不到了。

6. “分数或百分数+of+名词”作主语时，谓语动词形式随of后的名词的数的变化而变化

“分数或百分数+of+名词”作主语时，谓语的单复数取决于of后面的名词的含义，如果of后接不可数名词，谓语动词用单数形式；如果of后接复数名词，谓语动词用复数形式。

Over 80 percent of the water goes into the air through evaporation.

80%的水分通过蒸发散失到空气中了。

One third of the employees in that company are no more than thirty years old.

那家公司三分之一的员工不到30岁。

7. 由“all of, most of, a lot of, some of, none of, plenty of, the rest of, the majority of等+名词”作主语时，谓语动词的单复数形式应与of后的名词一致

All of his spare time has been spent in playing football.

他所有的业余时间都花在踢足球上了。

Most of the boys in our class have seen Wolf Warriors II.

我们班大部分男生都看过《战狼2》。

8. a quantity of+不可数名词，谓语动词用单数形式；quantities of+可数或不可数名词，谓语动词用复数形式

A small quantity of vinegar is needed for cooking the dish. 做这道菜需要少量的醋。

Large quantities of milk are in need in that country. 那个国家需要大量的牛奶。

9. “the+形容词或分词”表示一类人或物时，谓语动词用复数

The rich are supposed to help the poor. 富人应当帮助穷人。

10. what引导的主语从句作主语时，谓语动词一般用单数，但所指的具体内容如果是复数意义，谓语动词用复数形式

What we need is a clean and peaceful world. 我们需要的是一个干净和平的世界。

What I have are nothing but two hands and a willing mind. 我所有的只是双手和决心。

考点3 临近原则

临近原则是指谓语动词的单复数与最近的主语的单复数形式保持一致。

1. 当not only... but（also）...，either... or...，neither... nor...，not... but...等引导并列主语时，谓语动词的单复数取决于靠近谓语动词的主语的单复数

Neither her younger brothers nor she is willing to return.

她和她的弟弟们都不愿意回来。

Not only Tom but also his parents have been tired of telling the story.

不仅汤姆而且他的父母都厌倦了讲述这个故事。

2. 在某些倒装句或倒装结构中，谓语动词的单复数也取决于临近主语的单复数形式

There is a pen and two books on the desk. 桌子上有一支笔和两本书。

There are two books and a pen on the desk. 桌子上有两本书和一支笔。

二、特殊句式（强调、倒装、省略及其他）

考点1 There be结构

There be句型表示某物或某事存在或不存在。There be后面的名词是句子的主语，属倒装结构。

1. There be句型与情态动词连用

There be句型中的谓语动词be可与各种情态动词连用。

He felt that there must be something wrong. 他感到一定是出了错儿。

There should be a law against that. 应该有法律来约束它。

2. There be句型与happen to, appear/seem to, be going to, used to, be likely to等连用

There be句型中的谓语动词be还可以与happen to（碰巧），appear/seem to（似乎），be going to（将会），used to（曾经），have to（必须），be likely to（很可能）等连用。

There happened to be an old friend of mine in the club.

在那个俱乐部碰巧有我的一个老朋友。

There used to be a tall building by the playground. 过去，在操场边上有一座高楼。

There is likely to be an exhibition in that galary next weekend.

下周末，那家画廊可能有一次展览。

3. There be句型中be动词的变体

There be句型中的动词be有时可根据情况换成其他动词。这些动词有两类：一类是表示存在概念的状态动词，如：exist, remain, live, lie, stand；一类是表示某事发生或某人到达等概念的不及物动词，如：come, enter, arise, occur, follow, appear。

There lies a river behind the house. 房子后面有一条河。

Then there came a knock at the door. 然后听到了敲门声。

There once lived a poor farmer who had four sons.

从前有个穷苦的农夫，他有四个儿子。

注意

在这类句型中，有时将地点状语提前（置于句首），则可以省略there。

Behind the house（there）lies a river. 房子后面有一条河。

4. There be的非谓语动词形式

There be 结构也可以以不定式（there to be）、动名词（there being）和现在分词（there being）的形式出现在句子中，作主语、宾语或状语。

I don’t want there to be any more trouble. 我不希望再有麻烦了。（不定式作宾语）

I expect there to be no argument about this.

我希望对此没有什么争论。（不定式作宾语）

What’s the chance of there being an election this year?

今年举行大选的可能性有多大？（动名词作介词宾语）

There being a bus stop so near the house is a great advantage.

离房子这么近有一个汽车站，这太便利了。（动名词作主语）

There being nothing else to do, we went home.

没有别的事可做，我们就回家了。（分词作状语，属于独立主格结构）

5. There be构成的固定句型

· There is no point in+v-ing：没道理，没用，没必要

· There is no use（in）+v-ing：毫无用处

· There is no sense in+v-ing：毫无道理

· There is no need to+v：没有必要

· There is no doubt that... 毫无疑问

例如：

There is no point in arguing further. 再争下去也没用。

There is no use in hiding that fact from him. 对他隐瞒那个事实没什么用。

There is no sense in making a child suffer like that.

让一个孩子受那样的苦是毫无道理的。

There is no need for him to remain in Shanghai. 他没有必要再留在上海。

There is no doubt that our educational system leaves something to be desired.

毫无疑问，我们的教育制度令人不满意。

考点2 感叹句和祈使句

1. 感叹句

感叹句是表达喜怒哀乐等强烈情感的句子。通常以how和what开头，其中what修饰名词，how修饰形容词、副词或动词。

（1）由what引导的感叹句

其句子结构可分为以下三种：

① What+a/an+形容词+可数名词单数+主语+谓语!

② What+形容词+可数名词复数+主语+谓语!

③ What+形容词+不可数名词+主语+谓语!

（感叹句中的“主语+谓语”可以省略）

例如：

What a fine day it is! 多好的天气呀!

What clever boys they are! 他们是多么聪明的孩子啊！

What beautiful weather we have! 天气真好!

（2）由how引导的感叹句

其句子结构也分为三种：

① How+形容词/副词+主语+谓语!

② How+形容词+a/an+可数名词单数+主语+谓语!

③ How+主语+谓语!

（感叹句中的“主语+谓语”可以省略）

例如：

How beautiful the city is! 这座城市多么美丽！

How interesting a story it is! 这是个多有趣的故事啊！

How I missed you! 我多么想念你啊!

> 注意
>
> 有时感叹句也可以由一个单词、词组、祈使句、陈述句等构成。
>
> Good idea! 好主意！
>
> Wonderful! 太精彩了！
>
> Thank goodness! 谢天谢地！

2. 祈使句

祈使句是表达说话人的意愿、请求、叮嘱、号召、命令或建议的句子。它的主语you（听话人）通常省略，谓语动词用原形，句子末尾用感叹号或句号。

Make sentences after the model. 根据例句造句。

Be careful when crossing the street. 过马路时要小心。

Let him go back now. 让他现在回去吧。

（1）祈使句的否定形式

通常情况下在句首加上Don’t或Never，一般分为以下四种类型：

① 在祈使句的肯定句式前加Don’t，构成“Don’t+行为动词原形+其他成分”的结构。

Don’t say that again! 别再那样说了！

② 在be动词引起的肯定祈使句前加Don’t，构成“Don’t be+其他成分（形容词、名词或介词短语等）”的结构。

Don’t be careless. 不要粗心。

> 注意 在这种句型中be不能省略；否定副词not不可置于be之

后。

③ let引起的祈使句的否定形式有两种：

A. let开头的祈使句，如果后面跟第一、第三人称名词或代词的宾格，可在let前加Don’t，也可在let后宾格的名词或代词后面加not。

Don’t let me go with her tomorrow.=Let me not go with her tomorrow.

不要让我明天跟她一起去。

B. 如果是以Let’s开头的祈使句，必须在Let’s后加not。

Let’s not tell her the truth whenever we meet her.

无论什么时候我们碰到她，都不要告诉她真相。

④ 在公共场合的提示语中，否定祈使句常用“No+名词/v-ing”结构，表示“禁止做某事”。

No Photos! 禁止拍照！ No Smoking！禁止吸烟！

（2）祈使句的反意疑问句

须按其句子结构及讲话人的语气来决定其疑问部分。通常有以下三种形式：

① 祈使句为肯定句式，其反意疑问句表示请求时，通常用will you；表示邀请、劝说时，用won’t you。

Be sure to call me, will you? 你一定要给我来电话，好吗？

② 祈使句为否定句式，其反意疑问句通常只用will you。

Don’t smoke in the meeting room, will you? 不要在会议室吸烟，好吗？

③ let开头的祈使句构成反意疑问句时，除Let’s用shall we外，其他均用will you。

Let the boy go first, will you? 让那个男孩先走，好吗？

（3）祈使句和其他句式的搭配。常见三种形式：

① 祈使句+破折号+分句。分句起着对祈使句的补充、解释说明的作用。

Try some of this juice—perhaps you’ll like it. 尝尝这种果汁，或许你会喜欢的。

② 祈使句+and/or/or else+分句。祈使句是分句的条件，分句多使用一般将来时。

Leave it with me and I will see what I can do. 把它留给我吧，我想想有没有办法。

③ 祈使句用于条件状语从句的主句。从句多使用一般现在时态。

Tell him to make a phone call to me if he comes here tomorrow.

如果他明天来这儿的话，叫他给我打个电话。

考点3 强调和强调句型

1. 助动词do表示强调

谓语动词前用do的形式加强语气，相当于“务必，千万，一定；确定”等。它通常只能强调一般现在时和一般过去时。

He does look well. 他确实看上去很健康。

You did give me a fright. 你可真是吓了我一跳。

Do be careful in making such experiment. 做这样的实验千万要小心。

2. 强调句型

强调句型为：It is（was）+除谓语以外的被强调部分+that/who+句子其他部分。

构成强调句的it本身没有词义；强调句中的连接词一般只用that，强调的主语如果是人，可以由who代替that。即使在强调时间状语和地点状语时that或who也不可省略。强调句中的时态一般只有两种，一般现在时和一般过去时，原句谓语动词是一般过去时、过去完成时和过去进行时，用It was...，其余的时态用It is...。

强调主语：It was Tom who/that found my pen in the classroom yesterday.

昨天是汤姆在教室里找到了我的笔。

强调宾语：It was my pen that Tom found in the classroom yesterday.

昨天汤姆在教室里找到的是我的笔。

强调地点状语：It was in the classroom that Tom found my pen yesterday.

昨天汤姆是在教室里找到我的笔的。

强调时间状语：It was yesterday that Tom found my pen in the classroom.

汤姆是昨天在教室里找到我的笔的。

注意

在某些情况下，强调句型中的It is（was）的be动词也可以有其他形式，比如：

It may have been... that/who... 或许是……

一般去掉It was that句子仍然成立，且句意通顺，则为强调句型，不成立不通顺，则为其他形式。

It is well known that Sherlock Holmes was a famous detective.（主语从句）

众所周知，夏洛克·福尔摩斯是一位著名的侦探。

It was three years that I spent in American for a further study.（定语从句）

我在美国深造了三年的时间。

It was on February 12, 1809 that Lincoln was born.（强调句型）

林肯是在1809年2月12日出生的。

It was three years ago that he went to American for a further study.（强调句型）

他是三年前去美国深造的。

3. 强调句型的疑问句式

（1）一般疑问式：直接把is或was提到it之前即可。

Was it Tom that found your pen in the classroom yesterday?

昨天是汤姆在教室里找到了你的笔吗？

（2）强调句型的特殊疑问式：“特殊疑问词+is/was+it+that+该句的其余部分”。

How is it that you usually go to work? 你通常是怎样去上班的?

4. 强调句型与not... until...句型连用

在强调not... until...结构中由until所引导的短语（或从句）作时间状语时，要用固定的强调句型：“It+is/was+not until...+that+其他”，that所引导的从句中的谓语动词用肯定式。

His father didn’t come back from work until 12 o’clock.

→It was not until 12 o’clock that his father came back form work.

直到12点他的爸爸才下班回家。

5. 强调句型与原因状语从句连用

若从句由as或since引导，强调时则改为because，这是因为because引导的原因从句表示的意义非常强烈，符合强调句的目的。

Since he joined the army, he had to give up his career as an actor.

→It was because he joined the army that he had to give up his career as an actor.

正是因为他参了军，所以他不得不放弃了作为演员的事业。

考点4 部分倒装和完全倒装

倒装是强调的一种特殊形式。根据主语和谓语的语序，倒装分为部分倒装（谓语动词的一部分移到主语前）和完全倒装（整个谓语置于主语前）。

1. 完全倒装

常见的完全倒装主要有两种形式。

（1）句首是表示地点的介词短语或方位名词，且主语是名词时需要完全倒装。

关键词：句首地点；主语名词。

At the foot of the mountain lies a small village. It’s my home town.

在大山脚下有一个小村庄，那是我的故乡。

> 注意 当主语为代词时，则不需要倒装。Here you are. 给你。

（2）句首是表示方位的副词，且谓语是表示位置或转移等不及物动词或动词be形式时（如go/come/run/remain/seem/live/sit/rise），需要完全倒装。

关键词：句首副词；谓语不及物。

Out rushed the naughty boy with a football in his hand.

手里拿个足球的那个淘气男生冲了出去。

这其中包括了there开头的There be 句型。There be结构中be有时被come/exist/fall/occur/remain/rise /stand等不及物动词代替，使句子更加形象、生动。

There stands a leaning tower in the city of Pisa. 比萨城内矗立着一座斜塔。

此外，直接引语的一部分或全部位于句首时，需要完全倒装。

“He has never come to see his mother in the villiage,” said Alice.

爱丽丝说：“他从来没有来村庄看望过他的妈妈。”

2. 部分倒装

（1）句首为表示否定的副词或有no短语限定谓语或全句时，需要部分倒装。

常见否定副词及短语：never/seldom/not/nowhere/scarcely/rarely/barely/in no way/by no means/at no time 等。

Nowhere but in China have we seen the reform so clearly, which has surprised us all.

除了在中国，我们没有在其他地方如此清楚地看到过改革，这令我们所有人都感到惊奇。

（2）句首为“only+状语（从句）”需要部分倒装。关键词：句首；only；状语。三者缺一不可。

Only by taxi can you arrive there on time. 只有乘坐出租车，你才能按时抵达那里。

注意

only修饰主语时，不用倒装。

Only he managed to pass the exam. 只有他成功通过了考试。

（3）并列分句结构中的部分倒装

1）由并列连词not only... but also...，neither... nor...引起的部分倒装。

① not only... but also... 连接两个并列分句时，前者用部分倒装形式，but also连接的分句用正常语序。

Not only did we lose our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.

我们不但把钱丢了，还险些丢了性命。

② neither... nor... 连接的两个并列分句时，两个分句都要用部分倒装形式。

Neither could theory do without practice, nor could practice do without theory.

理论没有实践不行，实践没有理论也不行。

注意

当not only... but also...，neither... nor... 连接两个并列主语时不用倒装语序。例如：

Not only the students but also the teacher is active in learning French.

不仅学生，而且老师也在积极学习法语。

2）由并列连词so, neither, nor等引起的部分倒装。

① so（肯定句），neither，nor（否定句），引导的句子中，表示前面情况也适合后者。

—I have finished my homework. 我做完家庭作业了。

—So have I. 我也做完了。

② 当so 放于句首，对前面所说情况表示肯定或确认时不用倒装。

—He has finished his homework. 他做完了家庭作业。

—So he has. 确实是。

> 注意
>
> such表示“这就是……”，位于句首时需要完全倒装。
>
> Such were his words. 这就是他的原话。

（4）复合句型中的倒装

1）时间状语从句中的部分倒装。

当not... until...（直到……才……）引导的时间状语从句位于句首时，主句要用部分倒装形式，从句用正常语序。而hardly/scarcely... when...，no sooner... than...（一……就……）引导的时间状语从句，从句用部分倒装形式，主句不倒装。

Not until my father came back did I go to bed. 直到爸爸回来，我才上床睡觉。

No sooner had I left my house than it began to rain. 我一离开家，就开始下起雨来。

2）结果状语从句中的部分倒装

so/such... that...结构中，so/such位于句首加强语气，主句需要部分倒装，that从句不倒装。

So weak was he that he could hardly stand up. 他如此虚弱，几乎站不起来了。

（可还原为：He was so weak that he could hardly stand up.）

此外，一般疑问句、选择疑问句、反意疑问句和感叹句也属于部分倒装。

（5）特殊的倒装句

1）让步状语从句中的部分倒装。

在由as/though（尽管）或however（no matter how无论怎样）等引导的让步状语从句中，常将从句中的表语、动词或副词状语提至句首，但助动词不可前置。如果表语为单数可数名词，在采用倒装形式时，不定冠词必须去掉。

Clever as he is, he doesn’t study well. 尽管他很聪明，但他学习不好。

However late he is, his mother will wait for him to have dinner together.

无论他回来得多晚，他的妈妈都要等他一起吃晚饭。

Great scientist as he is, he remains modest.（=Though/Although he is a great scientist, he remains modest.）尽管他是一位伟大的科学家，他仍旧很谦虚。

2）if引导的虚拟条件状语从句中的部分倒装。

如果从句中的谓语动词含有were, had, should等助动词时，可将连词if去掉，从句采用部分倒装形式。

Had it not been for the free tickets, I wouldn't have gone to the films so often.

要不是有免费的票，我就不会经常去看电影了。

Should it rain tomorrow, we would have to put off the visit to the Yangpu Bridge.

如果明天下雨，我们就得推迟参观杨浦大桥。

考点5 反意疑问句

反意疑问句（The Disjunctive Questions或Question Tags）即附加疑问句。它表示提问人的看法没有把握，需要对方证实。反意疑问句由两部分组成：前一部分是一个陈述句，后一部分是一个简短的疑问句，两部分的人称和时态应保持一致。肯定的反意疑问句，一般用升调；否定的反意疑问句，一般用降调。反意疑问句有时带有感情色彩，表示惊奇、愤怒、讽刺、不服气等。

1. 反意疑问句的基本构成形式

反意疑问句遵循"前肯后否，前否后肯"的基本原则，即：

· 陈述部分肯定结构+反意疑问部分否定结构

· 陈述部分否定结构+反意疑问部分肯定结构

例如：

You went to Shenzhen last week, didn't you? 你上周去深圳了，不是吗？

He is a football player, isn't he? 他是一个足球运动员，不是吗？

Susan doesn’t like eating Japanese cuisine, does she? 苏珊不喜欢吃日本料理，是吗？

注意

① 反意疑问句一般遵循“前肯后否，前否后肯”的原则，但是如果前面的陈述句中使用了否定含义的代词、副词或限定词，如nobody, nowhere, nothing, no one, none, neither, hardly, rarely, few, little, seldom, scarcely, never等，则陈述部分仍旧应看作否定含义（尽管形式上是肯定的），所以反义疑问部分应该用肯定形式。

They seldom swam in a river, did they? 他们很少在河里游泳，是吗？

Nobody knows the news, do they?

没有人知道这个消息，是吧？（需用they指代nobody）

Nothing bad happened, did it?

没有发生什么不好的事情，是吧？（需用it指代nothing）

② 当陈述部分使用了含有否定含义的前缀（如-un, -dis）或后缀（如-less）的词（如unhappy, careless等）时，陈述部分仍看作肯定句，因此，反义疑问部分应使用否定形式。

She looks unhappy, doesn’t she? 她看上去不高兴，不是吗？

2. 祈使句的反意疑问句

（1）若陈述部分为肯定句，反意疑问部分通常两者都可以用（will you或won’t you）。

Open the door, will you?/won’t you? 把门打开，好吗？

（2）若陈述部分为否定句，反意疑问部分只能用will you。

Don’t forget to remember me, will you? 别把我忘记了，好吗？

（3）Let’s 表示的是第一人称祈使句，反意疑问句应用shall we或shan’t we。

Let’s go to the beach, shall we? 我们去海边吧，好吗？

Let’s have a coffee, shan’t we? 我们喝杯咖啡吧，好不好？

3. There be句型、used to句型中的反意疑问句

在there be句型中，反意疑问句部分需用be there的结构；在含used to的结构中，需使用didn’t或usedn’t。

There is a bank near the hospital, isn’t there? 医院附近有一家银行，不是吗？

He used to have long hair, didn’t he?（或usedn’t he?）他曾留过长发，不是吗？

4. 使用情态动词的反意疑问句

使用情态动词的反意疑问句应首先遵循情态动词本身的用法，例如must表示“必须”，那么它的否定答语应使用needn’t（不必），而不能使用mustn’t（不准），故反意疑问句也需使用needn’t；在含有表示推测的情态动词的反意疑问句中，反意疑问部分需根据实际情况而定。

You must do it today, needn’t you? 你必须今天做，是不是？（注意must表示“必须”，否定式用needn’t，即“不必”）

He must be happy, isn’t he? 他一定很高兴，不是吗？（must表示推测，需以实际情况为准，不可用mustn’t）

He can’t be a doctor, is he? 他不可能是一名医生，是吧？（注意can’t表示否定推测，所以，反意疑问部分需以can’t后的动词为准，故此处用了is）

5. 主从复合句中的反意疑问句

（1）在主从复合句中，反意疑问部分一般跟主句一致。

She said he had gone to Paris, didn’t she? 她说他去了巴黎，不是吗？

（2）在I think/believe/guess/suppose+that宾语从句的主从复合句中，反意疑问部分需与从句的动词一致，用肯定还是否定，需遵循“前肯后否，前否后肯”的原则根据主句情况而定。

I think he’ll come to help us, won’t he? 我想他会来帮助我们的，不是吗？

I don’t think he is clever, is he? 我觉得他不聪明，是吧？

6. 反意疑问句的答语

英语中，反意疑问句的答语与中文的思维不同，yes需翻译为“不”，no需翻译成“是的”，需注意。

—He doesn’t speak Russia, does he? 他不会说俄语，是吗？

—Yes, he does. 不，他会说。（yes翻译成“不”）

—His sister didn’t attend the meeting, did she? 他妹妹没有参加会议，是吗？

—No, she didn’t. 是的，她没参加。（no翻译成“是的”）

考点6 省略和替代

省略和替代这两种语言现象一般出现在上下文相同的语境中，目的是让句子言简意赅，避免重复。

1. 省略

（1）复合句的省略

1）状语从句由although/though, as if, until, once, unless, when, whether, where, while等引导，且同时具备下列两个条件：主句和从句的主语一致，或从句主语为it；从句的主要动词是be的某种形式，则从句中的主语和be动词常可省略。

When completed, the museum will be open to the public next year.（=When the museum is completed...）

明年当博物馆竣工时，将会对公众开放。

He’ll go to the seaside for his holiday if possible.（=... if it is possible.）

如果可能的话，他会去海边度假。

2）比较状语从句中的省略。

I’m taller than he.（=... than he is tall.）我比他高。

The higher the temperature, the greater the pressure.

（=...the temperature is, ... the pressure is.）

温度越高，压力越大。

3）某些虚拟语气的句子可以省略should。虚拟条件句有时可以省略if，从句使用倒装。

I suggest that he study more English before going abroad.

（=... that he should study...）

我建议他出国之前学习更多英语。

Were I you, I would go with her.

（=If I were you, ...）

如果我是你，我会和她一起去。

4）宾语从句中的连接词that和限制性定语从句中作宾语的关系代词that, which, whom常可省略。

I think（that）you are wrong. 我认为你是错误的。

She is the woman（who/whom/that）we are talking about.

她就是我们正在谈论的那位女士。

（2）并列句的省略

为使句子简洁，在无损句子完整的前提下常省略相同成分。

He often regards English as easy and（he often regards）French as difficult.

他经常认为英语简单，法语难。

I could have stayed home, but I didn’t（stay home）.

我原本可以待在家里，但是我没有。

（3）（简单句）习惯省略

1）对话语境中前后省略。

—How are you? 你好吗？

—（I’m）Fine. 很好。

2）介词in, from等在搭配中的省略。

He spends his evening（in）studying Chinese. 他晚上学习汉语。

They are busy（in）cleaning the room. 他们正忙着打扫房间。

We could stop them（from）moving the heavy box.

我们可以阻止他们挪动这个笨重的箱子。

类似省略情况还有：

· waste no time（in）doing sth. 赶紧做某事

· succeed（in）doing sth. 成功地做了某事

· have difficulty（in）doing sth. 做某事有困难

· have no trouble（in）doing sth. 做某事很顺利

· keep sb.（from）doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

· prevent sb.（from）doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

3）省略不定式符号to，不定式作动词make/let以及感官动词的宾语补足语时要省略to，但变成被动语态不能省略。

The boss made the workers work all day and all night. 老板让这些工人日夜工作。

The workers were made to work all day and all night. 工人们被迫日夜工作。

4）在密切联系的语境中，为避免重复，作宾语或宾语补足语的不定式只保留to。

Don’t touch anything unless your teacher tells you to.

除非老师要求，否则不要碰任何东西。

—Did you invite him to the party? 你邀请他参加聚会了吗？

—Yes, I’d tried to, but he refused to. 是的，我竭力邀请他，但是他拒绝了。

2. 替代

替代有三种：名词性替代，动词性替代和分句性替代。

（1）名词性替代常用one, it, that, those, the same和人称代词或物主代词。

Mr. Smith gave the text books to all the pupils except the ones who had already taken them.

史密斯老师把课本发给了所有学生，除了那些已经领到的。

I hope there are enough glasses for each guest to have one.

我希望有足够多的玻璃杯，每个客人都能有一个。

I hate it when people talk with their mouth full.

我讨厌人们说话时嘴里含满食物。

—He was nearly drowned once. 他曾经险些淹死。

—When was that? 什么时候的事情？

—It was in 1998 when he was in the middle school. 1998年他上中学的时候。

The houses of the rich are larger than those of the poor.

富人的房子比穷人的大。

—Can I have a cup of black coffee with sugar, please? 请给我来一杯加糖黑咖啡。

—Give me the same, please. 我也来一杯一样的。

（2）动词性替代常用do, do so（it, that）等。

—I told him about it. 我告诉他（这个事情）了。

—Yes, I did, too. 是的，我也和他说了。

He had promised to pay, but failed to do so（it/that）. 他曾答应要付钱，但是没有付。

（3）分句性替代常用so, not。

She hopes he’ll win and I hope so too. 她希望他能赢，我也希望如此。

—Will it rain today? 今天会下雨吗？

—I believe not.（=I don’t think so）我想不会。

（4）关于替代词so

so用于替代宾语从句的分句，表示说话者赞同上述情况。适用于这种情况的表示看法、意见等的动词有think, believe, expect, suppose, imagine, guess, say, hope, fear, be afraid等。

think so, believe so, except so等变为否定形式有两种途径：

1）用动词的否定形式。

2）用not代替so。

但be afraid so, fear so, hope so等变为否定形式只用第2种方法。

注意

与so有关的两个句型：

① 表示说话者赞同上述事实：So+主语+连系动词（助动词或情态动词）。

—It was cold yesterday. 昨天挺冷。

—So it was. 的确冷。

② 表示上述情况也适用于另一主语的句型

· 通用句型：so it is（was）with+另一主语。

He is a farmer. So it is with his brother.（= So is his brother）

他是个农民。他的弟弟也是。

· 只用于肯定情况的句型：So+连系动词（助动词或情态动词）+另一主语。

I enjoyed the book and so did my wife.（=So it was with my wife）

我喜欢这本书，我妻子也喜欢。

· 否定情况则使用：Neither（Nor）+连系动词（助动词或情态动词）+另一主语。

She didn’t come. Neither/Nor did her sister.（=So it was with her sister）

她没有来。她的妹妹也没来。

专项练习

I. 单句改错。（仅限1处）

1. There are only one TV set and two computers in the room.

2. How strange clothes he is wearing!

3. It may have been at Christmas when John gave Mary a handbag.

4. Not until Mr. Smith came to China didn’t he know what kind of a country she is.

5. Nearby was two canoes in which they had come to the island.

II. 在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

6. It is dawn now. However, there _____ still another 20 miles to drive.

7. _____（not tell）him the bad news if he comes here tomorrow.

8. It is Mr. Robbins accompanied by his wife and children who _____（be）in Europe since

several weeks ago.

9. The boy picked up a coin in the road and _____（hand）it to a policeman.

10. —John likes apples and he doesn’t go to school by bus.

—So it is _____ John’s sisiter.

III. 单项选择。

11. Such poets as Shakespeare _____ widely read, of whose works, however, some _____ difficult to understand.

A. are; are

B. is; is

C. are; is

D. is; are

12. It is reported that many a new house _____ at present in the disaster area.

A. are being built

B. is building

C. are building

D. is being built

13. The teacher together with the students _____ discussing Reading Skills that _____ newly published in America.

A. are; were

B. is; were

C. are; was

D. is; was

14. Professor James will give us a lecture on the Western culture, but when and where _____ yet.

A. hasn’t been decided

B. haven’t decided

C. isn’t being decided

D. aren’t decided

15. Either you or one of your students _____ to attend the meeting that is due tomorrow.

A. are

B. is

C. have

D. be

16. Anyone, once _____ positive for the flu virus, will receive free medical treatment from our government.

A. to be tested

B. being tested

C. tested

D. to test

17. It was 80 years before Christopher Columbus crossed the Atlantic _____ Zheng He sailed to East Africa.

A. when

B. that

C. after

D. since

18. —Alice, feed the bird today, _____?

—But I fed it yesterday.

A. do you

B. will you

C. didn’t you

D. don’t you

19. Before you quit your job, _____ how your family would feel about your decision.

A. consider

B. considering

C. to consider

D. considered

20. _____ a strange animal! I’ve never seen it before.

A. Which

B. What

C. How

D. Whether

21. It was ten minutes ago that there _____ an eraser, a pen and some books on the desk.

A. was

B. were

C. is

D. be

22. John opened the door. There _____ he had never seen before.

A. a girl did stand

B. a girl stood

C. did a girl stand

D. stood a girl

23. It was not until in the evening _____ her husband arrived home.

A. which

B. when

C. that

D. how

24. If _____ to look after luggage for someone else, inform the police at once.

A. asked

B. to ask

C. asking

D. having asked

25. You are waiting at a wrong place. It is at the hotel _____ the coach picks up tourists.

A. who

B. which

C. where

D. that

Ⅳ. 阅读下列短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

Everyone has different ways to spend time on weekends, and __**26**__ have I. I personally think people should be in a good mood when they do physical exercises. __**27**__ in this way can they be heathy not only physically but also psychologically. Don't still diet, or you __**28**__（be）out of touch.

There is a river in my hometown. South of our city __**29**__（lie）a big mountain. So clear is the river __**30**__ we can see the fish swimming happily in the bottom. It was between 2015 and 2016 that great changes took place in my opinion about exercise. I chose moutain climbing and became a mountaineer.

There __**31**__（be）interesting hikes inland, but most ramblers stick to the clifftops. Last year some ramblers lost their way in a mountain. The accident served as a timely reminder of just how __**32**__（danger）mountaineering can be. Dangerous __**33**__ it is, I still like this activity.

It is only when I climb the top of a mountain __**34**__ I began to appreciate its beauty. Especially when __**35**__（reach）the top of the mountain we can enjoy the scenery of the city that we live in.

Part 2 强化集训

强化集训 1

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. We gave a party and everybody came and I think it was _____ success.

2. We appreciate your cooperation and look forward to _____（receive）your order early.

3. _____（tire）and hungry, he was soon dead to the world.

4. There is a public library in every town in Britain, where anyone can borrow books if he or she _____（wish）.

5. _____（ride）bikes is a good solution. As a result, it's of great significance for every one of us _____（ride）bikes to work instead of driving.

6. I wonder _____ it's convenient for you to take care of my little dog when I'm on holiday next week.

7. It's high time we _____（do）something about it before it gets worse.

8. When _____（eat）a cooked fish, you should take care to ensure that you would not choke on a fish bone.

9. Nowadays many students are addicted to the net, _____ causes their poor performance at school.

10. It's Mary and James that _____（be）standing behind the counter now.

II. 单项选择。

1. Let’s go to _____ cinema—that’ll take your mind off the problem for _____ while.

A. the; the

B. the; a

C. a; the

D. a; a

2. Could I speak to _____ is in charge of International Sales please?

A. who

B. what

C. whoever

D. whatever

3. His sister left home in 1998, and _____ since.

A. had not been heard of

B. has not been heard of

C. had not heard of

D. has not heard of

4. She brought with her three friends, none of _____ I had ever met before.

A. them

B. who

C. whom

D. these

5. Edward, you play so well. But I _____ you played the piano.

A. didn’t know

B. hadn’t known

C. don’t know

D. haven’t known

6. The computer was used in teaching. As a result, not only _____, but students became more interested in the lessons.

A. saved was teachers' energy

B. was teachers' energy saved

C. teachers' energy was saved

D. was saved teachers' energy

7. Encourage your children to try new things, but try not to _____ them too hard.

A. draw

B. strike

C. rush

D. push

8. One of the most important questions they had to consider was _____ of public health.

A. what

B. this

C. that

D. which

9. Everybody was touched _____ words after they heard her moving story.

A. beyond

B. without

C. of

D. in

10. Now that we've discussed the problem, are people happy with the decisions _____?

A. taking

B. take

C. taken

D. to take

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

The Silk Road

The Silk Road got its name in the 19th century when a German geographer identified __1__ as the route through which the Romans got their silk from China. However, silk wasn't the only thing __2__ passed along the Silk Road; anything that had buyers __3__ （trade）along the road. Goods were traded from market to market passing through many hands __4__ they reached their final destinations.

The Silk Road was not just the route through which goods were carried. It was also important for the exchange of ideas. Buddhism from India entered China along the Silk Road and had a huge influence __5__ Chinese culture. Greek art styles were popular along the Silk Road and gave Buddhist statues in Northern India classical Western faces. These styles from Northern India were also found in Xinjiang.

One of China's famous monks, Xuan Zang, followed the Silk Road in the 6th century __6__ （collect）Buddhist scriptures from India. Around 600 years later, one of Europe's famous __7__ （travel）, Marco Polo, entered China along the Silk Road. Both Xuan Zang and Marco Polo left __8__ （detail）records of their journeys along the Silk Road.

Today, the Xinjiang Autonomous Region remains an international crossroad where traders from surrounding countries, and tourists from all over the world __9__ （regular）meet. Trade in precious stones, food, drinks, crafts, art, and of course, silk, __10__ （continue）, too.

B

Top universities in Canada

Canada is home to some of the top universities in the world. In fact, 26 Canadian institutions are counted among the __1__ （good）in the world, according to "Times Higher Education's World University Rankings 2016-2017".

You might not have heard of all of them, __2__ with eight universities in the top 200, Canada's best colleges offer plenty of opportunities for a

world-class __3__（educate）.

__4__（compare）with the US, Canada can also provide cheaper study options, simpler application processes and more opportunities __5__ permanent residency.

Canada’s top two universities—the University of Toronto and the University of British Columbia—score particularly highly for research impact, __6__ means that these schools are producing high-quality academic work that is well respected.

The University of British Columbia __7__（rank）in 36th position in the overall World University Rankings and 25 per cent of __8__（it）student population is international.

According to the Canadian Bureau for International Education’s International Student Survey, more than 90 per cent of students __9__（question）were satisfied or very satisfied with their studies in Canada, and 95 per cent would recommend Canada as __10__ study destination.

强化集训 2

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. Not only is the position of the earth changing but the earth _____（it）is undergoing changes.

2. Shanghai lies _____ the east of China and Japan is _____ the east of China.

3. As she turned back she caught the _____（puzzle）look on her mother’s face.

4. The teacher told us water _____（boil）at 100℃.

5. As the saying goes, failure is the mother of success. When _____（face）with failure, what we need to do is to calm down and reflect our learning methods.

6. I shouldn’t have laughed if I _____（think）you were serious.

7. There is no doubt _____ grades have improved and interest in education has revived.

8. As time _____（pass）, the most beautiful face in the world will also become old, unlovely, but the experience and inner character will last forever.

9. Mr. Liu wants to talk to the students _____ homework hasn’t been handed in.

10. You can hardly imagine _____ a hard time your mother had when she was a child.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. It is often _____ that human beings are naturally equipped to speak.

A. said

B. to say

C. saying

D. being said

2. Charles was alone at home, with _____ looking after him.

A. someone

B. anyone

C. not one

D. no one

3. Progress _____ so far very good and we are sure that the work will be finished on time.

A. was

B. had been

C. has been

D. will be

4. The children loved their day trip, and they enjoyed the horse ride _____.

A. most

B. more

C. less

D. little

5. All the dishes in this menu, _____ otherwise stated, will serve two to three people.

A. as

B. if

C. though

D. unless

6. The CDs are on sale! Buy one and you get _____ completely free.

A. other

B. others

C. one

D. ones

7. Jenny nearly missed the flight _____ doing too much shopping.

A. as a result of

B. on top of

C. in front of

D. in need of

8. They use computers to keep the traffic _____ smoothly.

A. being run

B. run

C. to run

D. running

9. My friend showed me round the town, _____ was very kind of him.

A. which

B. that

C. where

D. it

10. It's high time you had your hair cut; it's getting _____.

A. too much long

B. much too long

C. long too much

D. too long much

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

China's Grand Canal, the longest artificial waterway in the world, __**1**__（add）the World Heritage list on June 22, 2014. The heritage site consists of five sections of the Grand Canal across six __**2**__（province）and two municipalities in China, linking Hangzhou to the capital, Beijing.

The Grand Canal date dates back 2,400 years. With a __3__（long）of 1,794 kilometers, it's the longest man-made waterway in the world. And it is still __4__ use. By linking the Yellow River, the Huai River, the Changjiang River, __5__ the Qiantang River, it serves as a most important waterway __6__（transport）water from South China to North China.

__7__（construct）in sections from the 5th century BC onwards, it was designed as a means of communication in the 7th century AD. The Canal is the world's greatest civil engineering project before the Industrial Revolution.

The Grand Canal __8__（culture）square is located in Beijing's Tongzhou district. Ever since the Yuan dynasty 800 years ago, the Tongzhou section of the Grand Canal __9__（be）the life blood of Beijing. Grain and building materials were all transported to meet the endless demands of the big cities. Even today, the Grand Canal plays __10__ major role in the lives of its citizens.

B

Australia is the top destination for millionaires on the move.

An estimated 11,000 millionaires moved to Australia in 2016, according to a new report by wealth research firm New World Wealth. That compares to 8,000 millionaires __1__ moved down under the previous year.

The US and UK have __2__（traditional）attracted the highest number of wealthy migrants. But the allure of Australia has increased in recent years, especially for wealthy citizens of China and India.

New World Wealth said migrating millionaires are drawn to the sunny Australian lifestyle, as well as the __3__（country）highly rated health care system, which is considered to be in better shape than __4__ in the US and UK.

It __5__（consider）a safe place to live and raise children, and it's geographically isolated from conflicts in the Middle East and the refugee crisis in Europe.

Business considerations also play __6__ role: Australia is a good base for doing business in emerging Asian countries such as China, South Korea, Singapore and India, the researchers said.

The US is still considered a highly desirable destination, __7__（welcome）10,000 foreign millionaires last year. New World Wealth

expects demand to remain high.

Canada also saw a surge of 8,000 new millionaires __**8**__（come）to its shores. Rich Chinese citizens are moving to Vancouver while Europeans generally head to Toronto and Montreal. Meanwhile, France __**9**__（suffer）from a major exodus（大规模离开）of rich individuals now.

Over 12,000 millionaires left France last year, according to New World Wealth. In total, the country has experienced a net outflow of over 60,000 millionaires __**10**__ 2000.

强化集训 3

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. There are many _____（place）of interest in the city. We have visited some of the _____（city）

scenic spots.

2. I’m frightfully sorry, _____ I can’t see you today.

3. A survey showed people were _____（confuse）about what they should eat to stay _____（health）.

4. The first section of New College English _____（design）for speaking practice and is based on

pictures and topics.

5. Nuclear power will do harm to our health and safety if improperly _____（use）.

6. —Why don’t you wear your jogging shorts, Mum?

—Well, my legs are too skinny, if you _____ know.

7. _____ this will be successful or not is still difficult to predict.

8. _____ these questions are solved, the region will remain a powder keg（火药桶）.

9. I live in a room the window _____ which opens to the south.

10. _____（follow）your doctor’s advice, or your cough will get worse.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. You may use the room as you like _____ you clean it up afterwards.

A. so far as

B. so long as

C. in case

D. even if

2. Scientists have many theories about how the universe _____ into being.

A. came

B. was coming

C. had come

D. would come

3. For breakfast he only drinks juice from fresh fruit _____ on his own farm.

A. grown

B. being grown

C. to be grown

D. to grow

4. One of the few things you _____ say about English people with certainty is that they talk a lot about the weather.

A. need

B. must

C. should

D. can

5. —What do you think of teaching, Bob?

—I find it fun and challenging. It is a job _____ you are doing something serious but interesting.

A. where

B. which

C. when

D. that

6. The way the guests _____ in the hotel influenced their evaluation of the service.

A. treated

B. were treated

C. would treat

D. would be treated

7. All of them try to use the power of the workstation _____ information in a more effective way.

A. presenting

B. presented

C. being presented

D. to present

8. The wine industry in the area has developed in a special way, _____ little foreign ownership.

A. by

B. of

C. with

D. from

9. When I talked with my grandma on the phone, she sounded weak, but by the time we _____ up, her voice had been full of life.

A. were hanging

B. had hung

C. hung

D. would hang

10. _____ twice, the postman refused to deliver our letters unless we changed our dog.

A. Being bitten

B. Bitten

C. Having bitten

D. To be bitten

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Chinese New Year

Chinese Spring Festival, also __1__（call）Lunar New Year, has more than 4,000 years of history. Being one of the traditional Chinese __2__（festival）, it is the most important festival for Chinese people. It is also the time for the whole families to get together, __3__ is similar with Christmas Day to the westerners.

It comes on the first day of Chinese lunar calendar and lasts for almost half of a month. But in folk custom, this traditional holiday lasts from the 23rd day of the twelfth month __4__ the 15th day of the first month（Lantern Festival）in the lunar calendar. The New Year's Eve and the first day of the New Year __5__（be）the peak time. The exact days are different in every year according to the lunar calendar.

__6__（prepare）the New Year starts 7 days before the New Year's Eve. Every family does a thorough house cleaning and purchases enough food, including fish, meat, all kinds of fruits, etc., for the festival period. Also, new clothes must be bought, __7__（especial）for children. Red scrolls with complementary poetic couplets, one line on each side of the gate, are pasted at every gate. Many bad words related to "death", "broken", "killing", "ghost" and "illness" or "sickness" __8__（forbid）during conversations.

In China, different places have their own traditions and activities __9__（celebrate）the Spring Festival. Beijing, Guangzhou, Xi'an and Pingyao are some good places to go __10__ one intends to come during the time period.

B

The U.S. National Park Service had been celebrating its 100th anniversary in 2016.

Woodrow Wilson, America's 28th president, __1__（establish）the National Park Service in 1916 to "protect the wild and wonderful landscapes" in the US.

But it is an earlier leader __2__ is considered the father of the America's national parks. In 1906, Theodore Roosevelt, America's 26th president, signed the American Antiquities Act. The law permitted him—and future presidents—to take immediate action __3__（protect）important cultural or

natural resources.

The Antiquities Act led to the __**4**__（create）of many of the 413 sites within the National Park Service today.

No president has played a __**5**__（big）role in protecting the country's natural and cultural resources than Theodore Roosevelt. During his time in office, he established five new national __**6**__（park）and 18 national monuments. In all, he protected over 93 million hectares of public land. He became known __**7**__ "the conservationist president".

Roosevelt's concern for the land and environment came from the time he spent in the Dakota Territory, beginning in __**8**__ 1880s.

The area where he traveled is now the state of North Dakota. Today, you will find a national park there __**9**__（name）in his honor. The park protects badlands, wildlife, scenic views, as well as two ranches（牧场）__**10**__ Roosevelt himself once lived.

强化集训 4

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. Last year, only about one in five books was written for _____（child）ranged from seven to ten years old.

2. —It’s top secret.

—Yes, I see. I will keep the secret _____ you and me.

3. A half-hour daily walk can be _____（beneficial）than one strenuous exercise a week.

4. Don’t phone me between 5 and 6. We _____（have）dinner then.

5. The talks was fruitful, but much remained _____（do）.

6. The children should _____（allow）to go to the movies with friends on Friday nights.

7. I tend to speak to _____ is seated next to me, which is _____ I have made so many friends on flights between Maryland and Ohio.

8. _____ they all live nearby, I lost contact with them really quickly.

9. The scientist has made another discovery, _____ I believe is of great importance.

10. _____ had I come into the room when it began to rain.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. —Have you finished reading Jane Eyre?

—No, I _____ my homework all day yesterday.

A. was doing

B. would do

C. had done

D. do

2. The workers _____ the glasses and marked on each box “This Side UP”.

A. carried

B. delivered

C. pressed

D. packed

3. I’ll spend half of my holiday practicing English and _____ half learning drawing.

A. another

B. the other

C. other’s

D. other

4. As a child, Jack studied in a village school, _____ is named after his grandfather.

A. which

B. where

C. what

D. that

5. Mary made coffee _____ her guests were finishing their meal.

A. so that

B. although

C. while

D. as if

6. When you are home, give a call to let me know you _____ safely.

A. are arriving

B. have arrived

C. had arrived

D. will arrive

7. Just be patient. You _____ expect the world to change so soon.

A. can’t

B. needn’t

C. may not

D. will not

8. The little boy won’t go to sleep _____ his mother tells him a story.

A. or

B. unless

C. but

D. whether

9. The discovery of gold in Australia led thousands to believe that a fortune _____.

A. is made

B. would make

C. was to be made

D. had made

10. We haven’t discussed yet _____ we are going to place our new furniture.

A. that

B. which

C. what

D. where

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Jingzhe is a solar term. The 24 solar terms are a very important part of the Chinese calendar. They come from the farming culture of ancient China. Some of them are about the __**1**__（arrive）of new seasons, some are about the weather and others tell changers about the living world.

Jingzhe __2__ （date）back to 2,500 years ago. When the insects wake, farmers know it's time __3__ （plough）the land. Chinese farmers take insects very __4__ （serious）. Insects show them __5__ the world of nature is changing and it will help them with their work. But it's also a time of celebration. Jingzhe is the moment of the year __6__ crickets（蟋蟀）begin to sing. The crickets die in the autumn, __7__ （cause）a time of sadness. But in spring millions of them are born and there is new happiness. Cricket culture has been very important in China. Crickets were first loved for their singing. Later the ladies of the palace put them in cages so they could listen to them sing in winter. This practice became popular __8__ common people as well. And there is a long history of cricket fighting too, __9__ sport that is still a favorite with older Chinese people. Listen out for them tomorrow, __10__ perhaps you'll be lucky enough to catch their first songs!

B

How Did Thanksgiving "Turkey" Get Its Name?

The U.S. Thanksgiving holiday is symbolized by its __1__ （tradition）food, a large bird we call a turkey. But turkey is __2__ （certain）not from Turkey.

In fact, its English name is based on one big mistake. We could say it is __3__ case of mistaken identity.

The word "Turkey" __4__ （mean）"the land of the Turks" since ancient times. The word "turkey" as it refers to the bird first __5__ （appear）in the English language in the mid-1500s.

The misunderstanding over the word happened because __6__ two similar-looking kinds of birds.

There is an African bird __7__ （call）the guinea fowl. It has dark feathers with white spots and a patch of brown on the back of __8__ （it）neck. Portuguese traders brought the guinea fowl to Europe through North Africa.

This foreign bird came to Europe through Turkish lands. So, the English thought of the bird as a "Turkish chicken".

Some Europeans saw an American turkey, thought that it was the guinea fowl, __9__ at that time was called the "turkey cock," and so gave it the same name.

Hundreds of years later, we continue to call this North American bird "turkey," even __**10**__ it has no connection at all with the country Turkey, or even with Europe.

强化集训 5

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. “You said there was _____ you wanted to ask me and I come to tell you,” he said politely.

2. Leaves are found on all kinds of trees, but they differ greatly _____ size and shape.

3. With so many people around, it wasn’t _____（convenience）to have a long talk with him.

4. Hundreds of jobs _____（lose）if the factory closes.

5. The war came to an end; many things were waiting to be done. The people had to make every effort _____（reconstruct）their country.

6. She might _____（achieve）greater progress, if you had given her more chances.

7. There is no doubt _____ we will visit that beautiful village again.

8. It was _____ he did not feel very well that he was late for school.

9. We came to a place, _____ stood a big tower.

10. My husband _____（spend）hours in the bathroom, but then again so do I.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. Tom was about to close the window _____ his attention was caught by a bird.

A. when

B. if

C. and

D. till

2. My mother opened the drawer to _____ the knives and spoons.

A. put away

B. put up

C. put on

D. put together

3. Barbara is easy to recognize as she’s the only one of the women who _____ evening dress.

A. wear

B. wears

C. has worn

D. have worn

4. Though _____ to see us, the professor gave us a warm welcome.

A. surprising

B. was surprised

C. surprised

D. being surprised

5. Neither side is prepared to talk to _____ unless we can smooth things over between them.

A. others

B. the other

C. another

D. one other

6. The island is _____ attractive in spring and autumn because of the pleasant weather in both seasons.

A. partly

B. merely

C. nearly

D. equally

7. Linda makes sure the table _____ before the guests arrive.

A. be set

B. set

C. are set

D. are setting

8. I refuse to accept the blame for something _____ was someone else's fault.

A. who

B. that

C. as

D. what

9. Excuse me. I _____ I was blocking your way.

A. didn't realize

B. don't realize

C. haven't realized

D. wasn't realizing

10. Mr. Black is very happy because the clothes made in his factory have never been _____.

A. popular

B. more popular

C. most popular

D. the most popular

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

The cheongsam is a female dress with distinctive Chinese features and enjoys a growing popularity in the international world of high fashion. The name "cheongsam," meaning simply "long dress," __**1**__（enter）the English vocabulary from the dialect of China's Guangdong Province at the beginning of Qing Dynasty. In other parts of the country __**2**__（include）

Beijing, however, it is known as “qipao”, which has a history behind it.

After the early Manchu（满族）rulers came to China, the Manchu women wore __3__（normal）a one-piece dress which came to be called “qipao”. __4__ the 1911 Revolution ended the rule of the Qing, the female dress survived the change and, with later improvements, has become the __5__（tradition）dress for Chinese women.

The cheongsam, __6__ neck is high, collar closed, fits well the female Chinese figure, and its sleeves may be either short, medium or full __7__（long）, depending on seasons or tastes. In addition, it is not too complicated to __8__（make）. Nor __9__ it need too much material. Another beauty of the cheongsam is that, they can be worn either on casual or formal occasions. In either case, it creates __10__ impression of simple and quiet charm, elegance and neatness.

B

A powerful storm has brought down one of the most famous trees in the US.

The huge “Pioneer Cabin Tree” fell Sunday in northern California during a storm __1__ caused severe flooding.

The giant sequoia（红杉）is famous for having a large hole at the bottom of __2__ trunk. The hole was big enough for people __3__（walk）under. In the past, California state officials permitted vehicles to drive __4__ it.

Until now, thousands of people traveled to the Calaveras Big Trees State Park each year to see the giant sequoia. The park __5__（be）located east of San Francisco, near Yosemite National Park. Some officials believed the tree was to up to 2,000 years old.

Many visitors to the state park took pictures while __6__（stand）underneath the famous sequoia. After hearing about the tree, some posted photos and messages on social media about their __7__（memory）and experiences.

The tunnel that made the sequoia famous also weakened it over time. The hole __8__（make）in the 1880s to let people and vehicles pass through the tree. This began with horses and buggies and later with cars. __9__（eventual）, the path going under the tree was only open to people walking.

Sequoias are the __**10**__（large）tree species in the world. They can reach up to eight meters in diameter（直径）.

强化集训 6

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. He is _____ European. He is _____ honest man and I have decided to make friends with him.

2. The two sportsmen congratulated each other _____ winning the match by shaking hands.

3. I am confident, independent, optimistic and enthusiastic. More _____（important）, I'm very patient.

4. This book changed my life. I _____（read）every other book on this subject before finding this one. This is the best one, completely different from the others.

5. After _____（consult）with the manager, the actress decided to take on the part, but on her terms.

6. I would have told you all about the boy's story, but you _____（not ask）me.

7. In view of the fact _____ Hobson was not a trained economist his achievements were remarkable.

8. He was in such a hurry _____ he almost pushed me over on the stairs.

9. Marx was born in Germany, and German was his native language. So it was _____ Engels.

10. There seems to be nothing _____ is impossible to him in the world.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. _____ at my classmates' faces, I read the same excitement in their eyes.

A. Looking

B. Look

C. To look

D. Looked

2. In the spoken English of some areas in the US, the “r” sounds at the end of the words _____.

A. are dropped

B. drop

C. are being dropped

D. have dropped

3. —Good morning. I’ve got an appointment with Miss Smith in the Personnel Department.

—Ah, good morning. You _____ be Mrs. Peters.

A. might

B. must

C. would

D. can

4. I’m calling to enquire about the position _____ in yesterday’s China Daily.

A. advertised

B. to be advertised

C. advertising

D. having advertised

5. Children who are not active or _____ diet is high in fat will gain weight quickly.

A. what

B. whose

C. which

D. that

6. _____ they decide which college to go to, students should research

the admission procedures.

A. As

B. While

C. Until

D. Once

7. I want to be liked and loved for _____ I am inside.

A. who

B. where

C. what

D. how

8. Part of the reason Charles Dickens loved his own novel, David Copperfield, was _____ it was rather closely modeled on his own life.

A. what

B. that

C. why

D. whether

9. _____ some people regard as a drawback is seen as a plus by many others.

A. Whether

B. What

C. That

D. How

10. —The weather has been very hot and dry.

—Yes. If it had rained even a drop, things would be much better now! And my vegetables _____.

A. wouldn’t die

B. didn’t die

C. hadn’t died

D. wouldn’t have died

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

During Chinese New Year, red envelopes are typically given by the married to children and the unmarried. The red symbolizes good luck __**1**__ the money wishes the recipient good fortune for time to come.

Chinese weddings are also occasions when red envelopes come into play. The amount __**2**__ （give）is supposed to cover the cost of the attendees and as a way __**3**__ （wish）the newlyweds good luck. While red envelopes shouldn’t be opened in front of the giver, it’s different during weddings. During Chinese weddings, there is a table at the front of the wedding reception __**4**__ guests can drop off red envelopes as gifts and sign their __**5**__ （name）on a large scroll. The envelopes are then __**6**__ （immediate）opened, counted and then recorded to show how much each guest gave. Why? It’s mainly to bookkeep and to make sure the money matches with __**7**__ the guests brought at the end of the night. Another reason is that when single guests finally get married, the bride and groom __**8**__ （expect）to give the guest __**9**__ （much）money than what they received at their own wedding.

At work, it’s __**10**__ tradition that some Chinese companies give away red envelopes to their employees on the eve of Chinese New Year.

B

Since 2012, Suy Senglim, a Cambodian man, __**1**__ （use）his love of photography for a good cause: protecting wildlife.

As more and more animal species began to disappear, he grew worried. So he created a photo project, __**2**__ will bring more attention to the loss of natural habitat in Cambodia.

Suy Senglim __**3**__ （careful）documents each species he photographs. He records the common name of each creature, its scientific name and identifying qualities, and whether or not the species is endangered.

He hopes to educate Cambodians about the __**4**__ （important）of bird species and the effect development has on nature.

The Giant Ibis is Cambodia’s national bird. It is considered endangered,

with its population __5__（increase）every year. His photography work has shown him how lack __6__ education and law enforcement makes the problem worse.

Hunting is at the root of Cambodian culture, he said. But he notes that centuries ago, there were __7__（many）animals and fewer people. Educating Cambodians about the need for saving natural resources __8__（be）very important to him.

Suy Senglim is working on __9__ book on 100 bird species from among the 400 species he has photographed. He hopes to publish the book in early 2018. He looks forward to __10__（teach）in high schools and colleges to influence a new generation of nature-lovers.

强化集训 7

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. My father didn't mind whom I married, so long as I could stand on my own two _____（foot）and wasn't dependent on my husband.

2. The art show was far from _____（be）a failure—it was a great success.

3. The more you practise, the _____（well）you can understand.

4. —I'm not finished with my dinner yet.

—But our friends _____（wait）for us.

5. I like the taste of wine and enjoy _____（try）different kinds.

6. What I did was right and if I had done anything less it _____（be）wrong.

7. He said the book was very interesting and _____ all the children like to read it.

8. No matter _____ a woman tries to do to improve her situation, there is some barrier or attitude to keep her down.

9. English is a "fixed-word-order" language, one _____ each phrase has a fixed position.

10. _____ fast does light travel that we can hardly imagine its speed.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. Try _____ she might, Sue couldn't get the door open.

A. if

B. when

C. since

D. as

2. Planning so far ahead _____ no sense—so many things will have changed by next year.

A. made

B. is making

C. makes

D. has made

3. I can _____ the house being untidy, but I hate it if it’s not clean.

A. come up with

B. put up with

C. turn to

D. stick to

4. The next thing he saw was smoke _____ from behind the house.

A. rose

B. rising

C. to rise

D. risen

5. Only when he reached the tea-house _____ it was the same place he’d been in last year.

A. he realized

B. he did realize

C. realized he

D. did he realize

6. When Alice came to, she did not know how long she _____ there.

A. had been lying

B. has been lying

C. was lying

D. has lain

7. The prize will go to the writer _____ story shows the most

imagination.

A. that

B. which

C. whose

D. what

8. They _____ have arrived at lunchtime but their flight was delayed.

A. will

B. can

C. must

D. should

9. It is generally accepted that _____ boy must learn to stand up and fight like _____ man.

A. a; a

B. a; the

C. the; the

D. a; 不填

10. William found it increasingly difficult to read, for his eyesight was beginning to _____.

A. disappear

B. fall

C. fail

D. damage

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Paper cutting is one of the most popular __**1**__（kind）of folk art. According to an archaeological study, its history __**2**__（date）back to the sixth century AD, but people think it may be hundreds of years __**3**__（early）than that.

In the past, paper cutting was __4__ （common）used in religious ceremonies of offering sacrifices. The ancient people cut paper into animals or people. They either buried them with the dead or burned them at the funerals, wishing that things which paper stood for could be with those people __5__ died. About a thousand years ago, paper cutting was used for decorating walls, windows, doors or desks for the festival atmosphere.

Paper cutting covers nearly all topics. __6__ （make）by hand, paper cutting is really beautiful. Whether simple or complicated patterns, no mistake can be made during the process otherwise the work __7__ （fail）. As society develops, fewer and fewer people learn this skill __8__ there are some persons that still regard it as a profession. At present, there are factories and associations for paper cutting in China. Exhibitions and exchanges __9__ （hold）regularly and books of this kind are published. Paper cutting has changed from decoration __10__ a kind of art.

B

The Old Man and the Sea by Ernest Hemmingway

This is a story of a long fight between an old, experienced fisherman __1__ the best fish he ever caught. Santiago has returned to the village __2__ any fish for 84 days. On the eighty-fifth day, his luck changes and __3__ does his life. At 12 pm, a huge fish takes the bait. The man tries __4__ （pull）the fish up, but the fish is too big and strong. Instead, the fish begins to pull the boat. The old man continues to fight and hold on to the line.

On the third day, the fish gets __5__ （tire）. Santiago is able to pull the fish closer and kill it. It's the __6__ （big）fish he has seen in his life. But the blood of the fish attracts sharks. The boat __7__ （attack）by a shark, but Santiago is able to kill it. But it has eaten the meat of the fish and now only the skeleton is left.

This is a famous classic. So, if you ever find __8__ （you）in a conversation about literature and __9__ （book）, this is a good one to talk about. It has a little bit of difficult vocabulary. However, you won't have too much trouble __10__ （be）able to finish it.

强化集训 8

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. They found _____ pleasant that they worked with us Chinese.

2. Guangdong, therefore, became the window, _____ which Chinese and foreigners kept an eye on one another.

3. After _____（success）hosted the exceptional Olympic Games in 2008, Beijing is on a new start point to hold the 2022 Winter Olympics now.

4. It is reported that many a new house _____（build）at present in the disaster area.

5. An earthquake hit the capital, thus _____（cause）panic among the population.

6. I'm always in silence so he talks so loud as if I _____（be）deaf.

7. The young couple, who returned my lost wallet, left _____ I could ask for their names.

8. She was free to go to where she liked and do _____ she liked.

9. In an hour, we can travel to places _____ would have taken our ancestors days to reach.

10. Time _____（allow）, we would like to go to park after we arrive.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. Ted came for the weekend wearing only some shorts and a T-shirt, _____ is a stupid thing to do in such weather.

A. this

B. that

C. what

D. which

2. If you don’t like the drink you _____, just leave it and try a different one.

A. ordered

B. are ordering

C. will order

D. had ordered

3. Mary, I _____ John of his promise to help you.

A. told

B. reminded

C. warned

D. advised

4. I got this bicycle for _____: My friend gave it to me when she bought a new one.

A. everything

B. something

C. anything

D. nothing

5. Jane won’t join us for dinner tonight and _____.

A. neither won’t Tom

B. Tom won’t either

C. Tom will too

D. so will Tom

6. This shop will be closed for repairs _____ further notice.

A. with

B. until

C. for

D. at

7. This island, _____ to the mainland by a bridge, is easy to go to.

A. joining

B. to join

C. joined

D. having joined

8. Mr. Stevenson is great to work for—I really couldn't ask for a _____ boss.

A. better

B. good

C. best

D. still better

9. Sarah pretended to be cheerful, _____ nothing about the argument.

A. says

B. said

C. to say

D. saying

10. It was a nice meal, _____ a little expensive.

A. though

B. whether

C. as

D. since

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

24 Solar Terms Added to UNESCO Heritage List

China's 24 Solar Terms, a knowledge of time __**1**__（consider）to be the country's fifth great invention, were added to UNESCO's List of Intangible Cultural Heritage on Nov. 30，2016. The addition __**2**__（announce）by UNESCO at the 11th Session of UNESCO's Intergovernmental Committee for the Safeguarding of Intangible Cultural Heritage, __**3**__ opened on Nov. 28 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. The

inscription of the 24 Solar Terms extended __4__ number of Chinese items on the list to 31. The ancient Chinese divided the traditional lunar calendar __5__ 24 solar terms. The season-synchronizing system was based on people's __6__（observe）of the sun's annual motion and __7__（it）influence on climate, mostly carried out at the lower reaches of Yellow River where Chinese civilization was born.

The 24 Solar Terms come to being and develop in close relationship with Chinese __8__（agriculture）production. Astronomically, the 24 Solar Terms are defined according to the position of the sun on the ecliptic（黄道）. The Beginning of Spring, the first one of the 24 solar terms, __9__（regard）as the beginning of spring by the Chinese folks.

The 24 solar terms is the supplementary calendar to guide farm work in ancient China, and was formed in the Spring and Autumn Period and the Warring States Period. Later, it was introduced into North Korea, Japan and other neighboring __10__（country）.

B

In 1991, workers in New York City made a troubling discovery.

They found human bones. After examinations by experts, the remains were found to be of African-Americans, some of __1__ had been slaves. They had been buried in the 17th and 18th centuries.

Now, members of Congress from the state of New York want a museum and education center built. They want to help people remember __2__ learn about a very dark period in American history.

The congressional members estimate that 20,000 people—men, women and children— __3__（bury）at the place in the lower part of the New York City borough of Manhattan.

After the discovery of the remains, the burial ground was declared a National Historic Landmark in 1993. A monument was created in 2006 and later a __4__（visitor）center opened.

But supporters of the bill to build a museum and education center say more needs to be done so Americans __5__ never forget about slavery. It was a period when people were shipped from Africa against __6__（they）will, bought and sold, and made __7__（work）without pay. Many were separated __8__ families.

In __**9**__ interview, Michael Blakey, a physical anthropologist, said that many people are troubled by human remains. But he said they can provide important information about the people who were buried, __**10**__（include）the countries they came from.

强化集训 9

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. Scientists have discovered remarkable new evidence showing how the body rebuilds _____（it）while we sleep.

2. Do not wait _____ things to happen to you. You need to walk towards happiness.

3. If the manager had to choose between the two, he would say John was _____（good）choice.

4. It _____（occur）to me that I could teach English in China without having to learn Chinese.

5. Mrs. White showed her students some old maps _____（borrow）from the library the day before yesterday.

6. Had he worked harder, he _____（get through）the exams last year.

7. They retraced their steps to _____ they started.

8. _____ rich people are, they always seem anxious to take more money.

9. Remember that the best relationship is one _____ your love for each other is greater than your need for each other.

10. At the foot of the hill lies a beautiful lake. Near the lake _____（be）some farmhouses hidden in trees.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. Experiments of this kind _____ in both the U.S. and Europe before the Second World War.

A. have conducted

B. have been conducted

C. had conducted

D. had been conducted

2. _____ Barbara Jones offers to her fans is honesty and happiness.

A. Which

B. What

C. That

D. Whom

3. Tom _____ in the library every night over the last three months.

A. works

B. worked

C. has been working

D. had been working

4. It’s important for the figures _____ regularly.

A. to be updated

B. to have been updated

C. to update

D. to have updated

5. Mary was much kinder to Jack than she was to the others, _____, of course, made all the others upset.

A. who

B. which

C. what

D. that

6. —That must have been a long trip.

—Yeah, it _____ us a whole week to get there.

A. takes

B. has taken

C. took

D. was taking

7. _____ volleyball is her main focus, she's also great at basketball.

A. Since

B. Once

C. Unless

D. While

8. Maybe if I _____ science, and not literature then, I would be able to give you more help.

A. studied

B. would study

C. had studied

D. was studying

9. Sit down, Emma. You will only make yourself more tired, _____ on your feet.

A. to keep

B. keeping

C. having kept

D. to have kept

10. With new technology, pictures of underwater valleys can be taken _____ color.

A. by

B. for

C. with

D. in

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Kites have a long history in China. They may date back long time ago. They were made of bamboo and silk. Nobody knows __**1**__（exact）how or when a kite was first flown, but it is said that when a Chinese farmer tied a string to his hat to keep it __**2**__ blowing away in a strong wind, the first kite

was born.

Children like playing with kites. Kites for work or play __3__（make）of wood, bamboo, paper, or silk. In 478 B.C., a Chinese philosopher, Mo Zi, spent three years __4__（make）a kite out of light wood and bamboo. The earliest record of kite flying was in about 200 B.C. __5__ the Chinese General Han Xin of Han Dynasty flew a kite over the walls of a city. He wanted to know __6__ far his army would have to travel.

In __7__ 13th century, Marco Polo wrote about how the shipping businessmen flew the huge kite in the wind before the ship set sail. They predicted the voyage in this way. __8__ the kite went high and straight it meant a quick and successful voyage, but if it did not fly well, it was a bad omen（预兆）. In the late 1500s, the kite was introduced to Europe by the __9__（Italian）. Kite __10__（fly）was first mentioned in England in a popular book in 1589.

B

Summer in Britain

The summer is a great time to be in Britain. The British Museum, the Natural History Museum, the Tate Gallery are all a must-see for everybody who __1__（come）to the country, but there's also a lot of interesting things to do for those __2__ love the outdoors.

The Notting Hill Carnival changes the face of the famous London borough（大城市中的自治区）in the last weekend of August. It's the __3__（large）street festival in Europe. First __4__（hold）in 1964, it's a celebration of Caribbean culture but now includes Brazilians, Africans, Europeans and anybody else who likes to dress __5__（colourful）and feels the urge to dance to the sound of a beat.

With its __6__（popular）growing it's estimated that 50,000 performers will take part in the parade, __7__（attract）more than 1 million people over the weekend.

In mid-August, in Bristol, a city about 200km from London, the sky is filled __8__ colour during its annual balloon fiesta（宗教节日）. If the weather is good, more than 100 hot air balloons __9__（rise）up from the fiesta's site in Ashton Court.

Britain is full of traditions and sometimes just stopping at a country pub

for a beer __**10**__ having cream tea in a small tea room can make a moment special. Always be sure where you are, and learn enough English to ask for directions. Have a nice holiday!

强化集训 10

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. The shelves were filled with all sorts of vegetables—eggplants, cucumbers, cabbages and _____（tomato）.

2. Today Chinese characters are quite popular _____ Western youth.

3. This man may have killed others but _____（fortunate）we have no firm evidence.

4. I was on the point of telephoning him when his letter _____（arrive）.

5. I feel it a great honor to have this precious opportunity _____（make）a speech here.

6. He must have done it, for there _____（be）no one else in the room.

7. Life is 10% of what happens to you and 90% of _____ you react to it.

8. _____ you want to get a higher degree, you should strike while the iron is hot.

9. Only those _____ have no sense of shame can do such shameful things.

10. Our school has a long history. There _____（be）a tower and some houses in the campus at present.

Ⅱ. 单项选择。

1. Sarah looked at _____ finished painting with _____ satisfaction.

A. 不填; a

B. a; the

C. the; 不填

D. the; a

2. It is by no means clear _____ the president can do to end the strike.

A. how

B. which

C. that

D. what

3. Mary is really good at taking notes in class. She can _____ almost every word her teacher says.

A. put out

B. put down

C. put away

D. put together

4. The party will be held in the garden, weather _____.

A. permitting

B. to permit

C. permitted

D. permit

5. This restaurant wasn’t _____ that other restaurant we went to.

A. half as good as

B. as half good as

C. as good as half

D. good as half as

6. I _____ use a clock to wake me up because at six o’clock each morning the train comes by my house.

A. couldn’t

B. mustn’t

C. shouldn’t

D. needn’t

7. Film has a much shorter history, especially when _____ such art forms as music and painting.

A. having compared to

B. comparing to

C. compare to

D. compared to

8. I had been working on math for the whole afternoon and the numbers _____ before my eyes.

A. swim

B. swum

C. swam

D. had swum

9. You have to move out of the way _____ the truck cannot get past you.

A. so

B. or

C. and

D. but

10. If she doesn't want to go, nothing you can say will _____ her.

A. persuade

B. promise

C. invite

D. support

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

The Bai Ethnic Group

The Bai ethnic group has a population of around two million, and 90% of __**1**__ live in Yunnan. Their native region is the Erhai region of Yunnan,

__2__ main city is Dali. The Bai have their own dialect which resembles Chinese; however, Chinese is mostly spoken today.

The Bai have an agricultural economy, their main crops __3__（be）rice, wheat, beans and cotton. Their staple foods are pork, rice and wheat. The Bai have a tradition of building houses as a community, __4__（usual）beginning on a festival day. The houses are in the style of __5__（tradition）Chinese architecture. They also build halls known as Yunhe halls, which can hold about 200 __6__（people）and are used as community centers.

Known as good singers and dancers, the Bai have an opera, which __7__（combine）both music and dance. Another tradition is the Bai tea ceremony, in which tea __8__（serve）three times. The most well-known Bai festival is the Torch Festival, held __9__ June 25th of Chinese lunar calendar.

During this festival, a tree, __10__（know）as the torch tree, is burnt. Young mothers and their children walk round the tree three times for good luck, while others wish for a happy life for the village.

B

History of Slavery in France's Wine Capital

The southwestern French city of Bordeaux（波尔多）is a center of the wine trade. But hundreds of years ago, it __1__（be）the second-largest slave-trading port in France.

From the 17th to the 19th century, the city sent hundreds of ships carrying 130,000 __2__（slave）to America. The ships returned to Bordeaux with cotton, tobacco, sugar and rum（朗姆酒）, __3__（help）the city and its merchants grow rich.

Some former slave-trading cities have remembered that history with large public memorials. There is no such memorial in Bordeaux.

Karfa Diallo wants to change that. He is the __4__（direct）of the Memory and Sharing Association, which tells about Bordeaux's slave-trading past. He believes the city has not yet dealt __5__ its history or admitted the benefits it received from slavery.

His group offers travelers a two-hour trip through areas in the city __6__ slave-trading activities took place.

He explains that more than 12 city streets in Bordeaux __**7**__ （name） after well-known slave traders. Diallo had asked the city to consider renaming those streets. But now, he is asking officials to place signs near the streets explaining __**8**__ history of their names.

Even people who live in the city do not know much about __**9**__ （it） role in the slave trade.

The city government has created a group to study Bordeaux’s slave-trading history. It has asked people who live in the city __**10**__ they believe the government should do to remember the city’s history.

强化集训 11

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. The new government will make a _____（judge）about its interests and act accordingly.

2. Everybody was touched beyond _____（word）after they heard her moving story.

3. Atomic energy has been discovered for many years, but so far it has not been _____（wide）used in industry or in our daily life.

4. Thank you for understanding. I promise I _____（make）it up to you.

5. The local government has built a preserve _____（protect）this kind of animal.

6. We _____（not know）his telephone number; otherwise we would have telephoned him.

7. Long ago it was a current belief _____ the earth was flat.

8. No matter _____ difficult the task may be, we must complete it in time.

9. At the Academy, Plato taught the students through the use of debates, _____ two or more people took different ideas of an argument.

10. It wasn't until they had a heart-to-heart talk with me _____ I realized my mistake.

Ⅱ. 短文改错。

假定英语课上老师要求同桌之间交换修改作文，请你修改你同桌写的一篇作文。文中共有10处语言错误，每句中最多有两处。错误涉及一个单词的增加、删除或修改。增加：在缺词处加一个漏字符号（∧），并在其下面写出该加的词；删除：把多余的词用斜线（\）划掉；修改：在错的词下划一横线，并在该词下面写出改正后的词。注意：1. 每

处错误及其修改均仅限一词；2. 只允许修改10处，多者（从第11处起）不计分。

Dear Jack,

I’m glad you’ve been offered two summer jobs at same time—working in a restaurant and working in a museum. If I were him, I would take the one in the museum.

First, you can gain more knowledge about history, that will enrich your life great. Second, you can make more friend from different parts of the country by serve them when working there. Finally, compared to the job in the restaurant, working in the museum can be most challenging. If you find a position at there, I’m sure you’ll see a rapid improve in both your character and abilities. You will also have great time.

Good luck!

Yours，

Li Hua

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

While the tradition of __**1**__（drink）tea dates back to more than 3,000 BC in China, it was not until the mid-17th century __**2**__ the concept of “afternoon tea” first appeared in the UK.

In 1840, Anna Maria Russell, the seventh Duchess of Bedford, __**3**__（start）asking for a tea tray with butter, bread and cakes at 4 pm every day, as she found she was hungry at this time and the evening meal in her household __**4**__（serve）fashionably late at 8 pm. She found this new habit difficult to break and soon invited other __**5**__（lady）in society to join her.

This pause for tea __**6**__（quick）became a fashionable social event. During the 1880s, upper class and society women would change into long gowns, gloves __**7**__ hats for their afternoon tea.

Traditional afternoon tea, __**8**__ is typically served between 4 pm and 6 pm, is technically a small meal, not a drink. It consists __**9**__ a selection of dainty sandwiches, freshly baked scones served with cream and fruit jam, cakes and pastries. Of course, tea or coffee, __**10**__（serve）with milk and

sugar, is also provided.

B

March 14 is known around the world as “Pi Day.”

“Pi” is something you may remember from math class. It is the number that results when the distance around a circle __**1**__（divide）by the distance across the circle. It is a very important number in geometry（几何学）as well as for fields like __**2**__（construct）and architecture.

Pi is __**3**__ irrational number（无理数）. It never ends. But the way it begins __**4**__（be）always this: 3.14159. The date March 14, as we write it in the United States, is 3-14.

American physicist Larry Shaw __**5**__（start）Pi Day back in 1988.

Pi Day is not just for those __**6**__ enjoy numbers. Many people mark the math-inspired holiday by celebrating “pie,” —p-i-e, instead of “Pi.”

Pie is a popular dessert in the United States. It is made with a crust on the outside and usually a sweet __**7**__（fill）in the middle. Apple pie, pecan pie, and cherry pie are among the __**8**__（well）known.

Pizza is another kind of pie. It is made with a crust, tomato sauce, cheese and other toppings. One pizza restaurant is celebrating Pi Day __**9**__ a big way. The restaurant &pizza is letting customers get __**10**__（marry）at its locations in several East Coast cities.

强化集训 12

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. Jack’s parents have two _____（child）, but they want _____ third one.

2. Four Chinese models were _____ the 14 people awarded prizes on Friday at the World Supermodel Competition.

3. Some of the food crops failed. _____, the cotton did quite well.

4. The other day he ran across one of his friends on the street, _____ he had not seen for ages.

5. I asked her if she would allow me _____（interview）her, and she readily agreed.

6. He’s one of the few people I know who can open hearts to each other, and I wish we _____（meet）more often.

7. _____ has not been made clear when the new road is to be opened to traffic.

8. Heavily _____ it was raining outside, they started out very early.

9. He talked happily of the writer and his books _____ interested him.

10. Had you come yesterday, you _____（see）him then.

Ⅱ. 短文改错。

假定英语课上老师要求同桌之间交换修改作文，请你修改你同桌写的一篇作文。文中共有10处语言错误，每句中最多有两处。错误涉及一个单词的增加、删除或修改。增加：在缺词处加一个漏字符号（∧），并在其下面写出该加的词；删除：把多余的词用斜线（\）划掉；修改：在错的词下划一横线，并在该词下面写出改正后的词。注意：1. 每处错误及其修改均仅限一词；2. 只允许修改10处，多者（从第11处起）不计分。

As is known, some students have breakfast regularly. Therefore, others

don’t, or even skip it. Among of the students who have breakfast every day, only a few have a balanced diet which includes breads, milk and eggs. There is several reasons. First of all, many students don’t know an importance of breakfast. Besides, many parents have limited knowledge about that a balanced diet is. Finally, teachers give students too much tasks, so they have no time have breakfast. In a word, every student will have breakfast regularly. The more balanced diet one has, the healthy he will be!

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

It is difficult to imagine what the world was like in 1254. Europe was living in an age that we call the Medieval Period（中世纪）. It was a time of many wars. It was in that time __**1**__ Marco Polo was born in Venice, Italy. Life in Venice was different from life in most of Europe. Venice was a city of beautiful buildings and water canals. Many businessmen did business in Venice. Marco Polo’s father and uncle were businessmen. They __**2**__ （travel）to a far-off country called Cathay.（Cathay is now called China.） There they had friends with the great ruler, Kublai Khan（忽必烈）. He invited them __**3**__ （return）to Cathay. When Marco Polo was seventeen years old, he began a journey to China with his father and uncle. They sailed __**4**__ Indian Ocean and crossed the desert and mountains of Asia __**5**__ camels. The journey to China took three years. Kublai Khan greeted the Polos and sent them lots of gifts. He was especially impressed with Marco, __**6**__ could speak four languages including Chinese and others. Khan sent Marco on many trips throughout China. On these trips, Marco saw many amazing things that he had never seen in Europe, such as coal __**7**__ （use） as fuel, paper money instead of coins, and papermaking and printing processes. Marco made many notes about life in China. After almost twenty years in China, the Polos began their journey home to Italy. When they returned to Venice, they found their city at war. Marco Polo __**8**__ （put）in prison. He spent his time __**9**__ （write）a book about his years in China. The book is called Descriptions of the World. It became __**10**__ （popular） book in Europe. Because of the book, many people in Europe learned about life in China.

B

Sweden is so good at recycling that, for several years, it has imported

rubbish from other countries to keep its recycling plants going. Less than 1 percent of Swedish household waste __**1**__（send）to landfill last year or any year since 2011.

We can only dream of such an effective system in the UK, __**2**__ is why we end up paying expensive transport costs to send rubbish to be recycled overseas rather than __**3**__（pay）fines to send it to landfill under The Landfill Tax of 1996.

Why are we sending waste to Sweden? Their system is so far ahead because of a culture of looking after the environment. Sweden was one of the first __**4**__（country）to implement a heavy tax on fossil fuels in 1991 and now sources almost half __**5**__（it）electricity from renewables.

“Swedish people are quite keen on being out in nature and they are aware of __**6**__ we need do on nature and __**7**__（environment）issues. We worked on communications for a long time to make people aware not to throw things outdoors so that we can recycle and reuse,” says Anna-Carin Gripwall, director of communications for Avfall Sverige, the Swedish Waste Management’s recycling association.

She describes Sweden’s policy of importing waste to recycle from other countries as __**8**__ temporary situation. “There’s a ban on landfill in EU countries, so instead of paying the fine they send it to us as a __**9**__（serve）. They should and will build their own plants, __**10**__（reduce）their own waste, as we are working hard to do in Sweden,” Ms Gripwall says.

强化集训 13

I. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. Laughter is one of the most infectious _____（express）of emotion.

2. The United Nations appealed _____ the people of the developed countries for aiding those of the backward countries.

3. I am _____（true）sorry for this. I hope you did not feel too disappointed or inconvenienced.

4. After Jack had sent some e-mails, he _____（start）working on his project.

5. They complained other traders did everything they could _____（freeze）them out of the business.

6. I would rather that you _____（not go）to the cinema yesterday evening.

7. We must find out _____ Karl is coming, so we can book a room for him.

8. It's only a year _____ I last saw the child and he's grown so tall.

9. I'm writing to explain to you the reason for _____ I was absent from your lecture last time.

10. It is not who is right but what is right _____ is of importance.

II. 短文改错。

假定英语课上老师要求同桌之间交换修改作文，请你修改你同桌写的一篇作文。文中共有10处语言错误，每句中最多有两处。错误涉及一个单词的增加、删除或修改。增加：在缺词处加一个漏字符号（∧），并在其下面写出该加的词；删除：把多余的词用斜线（\）划掉；修改：在错的词下划一横线，并在该词下面写出改正后的词。注意：1. 每处错误及其修改均仅限一词；2. 只允许修改10处，多者（从第11处起）不计分。

Dear manager,

I’m one of your customer. The day before yesterday I bought a Kindle in your shop. Before I left, I do check it carefully and everything was all right. When I got home, therefore, I found a fault with it. The problem is what the “screen” doesn’t work at all. Probable it’s not your fault and so is mine. Anyhow, I can’t solve the problem in person.

You see, a Kindle is of great useful for me to learn English and I cannot wait for too long before this problem is solved. Hopefully you will deal with the Kindle without delay, when you accept my letter.

Hoping to hear of you in the earliest possible time!

Your sincerely,

Li Hua.

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Guangzhou, also called Yangcheng, capital of Guangdong Province, is the third __**1**__（big）city in China after Beijing and Shanghai with a population of more than 12 million, covering an area of 7,434 square kilometers. Founded in 214 B.C., the city has been a springboard for trading, cultural exchanges, many revolutions and reforms, __**2**__（make）it an unavoidable stopover to understand what shapes the modern China.

Guangzhou, which __**3**__（lie）close to the South China Sea, Hong Kong, and Macau, is located in the middle south of Guangdong Province, north of the Pearl River Delta. It is not only a famous historical and cultural city, __**4**__ the communication center of Guangdong Province, with railways and highways spreading in all __**5**__（direct）, and coastal and ocean transport as well. __**6**__（it）airport stands also in the forefront in passenger transport. __**7**__ we know, there are many interesting places in Guangzhou, White Cloud Mountain, Yuexiu Park, Guangxiao Temple, and Liurong Temple __**8**__（include）. In addition, efforts are being made __**9**__（build）Guanzghou into an international city functioning primarily as the biggest finacial, high-tech and light industrial, as well as communication and transport center in Sounth China. Therfore, it is really __**10**__ good place to visit.

B

Are you too old for fairy tales? If you think so, Copenhagen is sure to change your mind.

See the city first from the water. In the harbor __**1**__（sit）Denmark's best-known landmark: the Little Mermaid. Remember her? She left the world of the sea in search of a human soul in one of Andersen's popular __**2**__（fantasy）. From the harbor you can get a feel for the attractive "city of green spires". At twilight（黎明）or in __**3**__（cloud）weather, the spires of old castles and churches lend the city a dream-like atmosphere. You'll think you've stepped into a watercolor painting.

Churches and castles are almost all __**4**__ are left over in the original city. Copenhagen became the capital of Denmark in 1445. During the late 16th century, trade grew, and so did the city. But fires in 1728 and 1795 __**5**__（terrible）destroyed the old wooden structures. Much of __**6**__ we see today dates from the 19th and early 20th centuries.

Copenhagen was the first city __**7**__（declare）a street for pedestrians（行人）only. The city has the __**8**__（little）traffic noise and pollution among European capitals. __**9**__ you're from, you can come to dance, dine, and take in outdoor and indoor concerts. Even without money, you can still enjoy the proud old trees, the colored night lights and the beautiful gardens. You might feel as if you __**10**__（be）in a fairy tale.

强化集训 14

I. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. Hong Kong finished third, with Switzerland _____（two）; Singapore ranked _____（five）and Australia ranked ninth.

2. Listen to the teacher carefully in class, _____ you won't catch what he is saying.

3. It can be _____（benefit）to share your feelings with someone you trust.

4. Excuse me, Marcia, a reporter from China Daily _____（phone）all day. Could you speak to her now?

5. _____（graduate）from Beijing Foreign Studies University, she now works as an interpreter.

6. We suggested that he _____（make）an apology to his teacher.

7. My uncle is a kind-hearted man and never says "no" to _____ seeks help from him.

8. We will not attack unless we are attacked; if _____（attack）, we will certainly counterattack.

9. Anyone who _____（have）questions to ask, please come to my office this afternoon.

10. _____ the saying goes, Rome was not built in a day. _____ by sticking to studying persistently can we make progress step by step till success.

II. 短文改错。

假定英语课上老师要求同桌之间交换修改作文，请你修改你同桌写的一篇作文。文中共有10处语言错误，每句中最多有两处。错误涉及一个单词的增加、删除或修改。增加：在缺词处加一个漏字符号（∧），并在其下面写出该加的词；删除：把多余的词用斜线（\）划掉；修

改：在错的词下划一横线，并在该词下面写出改正后的词。注意：1. 每处错误及其修改均仅限一词；2. 只允许修改10处，多者（从第11处起）不计分。

Dear Ms Lee,

I'm delighting to have you as my English teacher. English has become a global language, but I'm convinced that learning English is of great use. We should learn English well to better understand that happens around the world.

But my English is rather poor. One of my problems are that I often feel nervously when speaking in public. Besides, I feel difficult to learn words by heart. I really hope you can offer me more chances to speak with English. But I also hope you'll give me some advices on how to learn new words. I believe I can make many progress than ever with your help.

Thank you!

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

With all aspects considered, the most desirable place __**1**__ comes to my mind and is worth visiting is Xi'an.

As the saying goes: If you want to acquire a sense of history about China, visit Xi'an. Xi'an, the provincial capital of Shaanxi Province of China, __**2**__（enjoy）a history that dates back to several thousand years ago. As we know, from the first dynasty when China became __**3**__ unified country, namely the Qin Dynasty, there were many emperors __**4**__（make）Xi'an their capital.

And now there are more than 5,700 sites within the city, such as the Pit of Terra-cotta Warriors and Horses of Qin Shihuang's Mausoleum, the most __**5**__（complete）preserved walls of the ancient city.

A visit to these heritages, I am sure, will let me learn about what China was like in the past and __**6**__ people lived at ancient times.

I was long told about the unique flavor of the local __**7**__（taste）foods, which is so different from the food __**8**__（cook）in my hometown. Moreover, many people who were back from Xi'an are actually making no effort __**9**__（hide）their love for foods there, giving me the __**10**__

（impress）that it would be a regret-whole-life thing if one does not try them in person.

B

For many people, the Renaissance means 14th to 16th century Italy, and the developments in art and architecture, music and literature which took place there at that time. But there is one work which, perhaps more than any other, __**1**__（express）the spirit of the Renaissance: the Mona Lisa. It is believed __**2**__（be）the best example of a new lifelike style of painting that amazed people when it was first used. __**3**__（paint）by Leonardo da Vinci in the years 1503-1506, the Mona Lisa is a mysterious masterpiece. People want to know who Mona Lisa is, __**4**__ why she is smiling. Even if people do not know much about the Renaissance, they have heard __**5**__ this painting.

But the Renaissance is, of course, more than just the Mona Lisa. Renaissance is a French word __**6**__ means “rebirth” and it first appeared in English in __**7**__ 19th century. The word __**8**__（use）to describe a period in European history which began with the arrival of the first Europeans in America, an age of exploration, and the __**9**__（begin）of the modern world. It was as if Europe was waking up after the long sleep of the Middle Ages. From Italy, the ideas of the Renaissance __**10**__（rapid）spread northwards to France, Germany, England, and the rest of Europe.

强化集训 15

Ⅰ. 根据语境，在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

1. It was in the _____（eleven）century in China that we had paper money for the _____（one）time.

2. At first he was a little shy, _____ now he acts more natural.

3. I believe the book is now out of print, but it can _____（easy）be borrowed from libraries.

4. —Why, Jack, you look so tired!

—Well, I _____（paint）the house and I must finish the work tomorrow.

5. He said, “China is a developing socialist country _____（belong）to the third world.”

6. The birds are quiet, too, the drops increasing in frequency, so it must _____（rain）above the forest.

7. Our hometown has changed a lot, and now it is quite different from _____ it used to be a few years ago.

8. The man in the store _____（not give）him change for the phone unless he buys something.

9. Mr. White wrote many articles, some of _____ were translated into Chinese.

10. Don’t go out, please. It _____（rain）heavily outside.

Ⅱ. 短文改错。

假定英语课上老师要求同桌之间交换修改作文，请你修改你同桌写的一篇作文。文中共有10处语言错误，每句中最多有两处。错误涉及一个单词的增加、删除或修改。增加：在缺词处加一个漏字符号（∧），并在其下面写出该加的词；删除：把多余的词用斜线（\）划掉；修改：在错的词下划一横线，并在该词下面写出改正后的词。注意：1. 每

处错误及其修改均仅限一词；2. 只允许修改10处，多者（从第11处起）不计分。

A new park for children has set up to welcome the coming of Children's Day. A park is in the south of our city, covered an area of 0.3 million square meters. If you enter into the park, you can see statues of children in different races. We are hand in hand, what is the symbol of the world peace. In the middle is a lake, around which is all kinds of trees and flowers. To the south of the lake is hill with a lot of monkey on it. The Children's Palace lie to the east. I'm sure the children in our city will have a happily festival this year.

III. 阅读下面短文，在空白处填写1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式。

A

Crying marriage? __1__（surprise）, isn't it? Factually, the custom of crying marriage existed a long time ago in many areas of Sichuan Province, and __2__（remain）in fashion __3__ the end of the Qing Dynasty. Though not so popular as before, the custom is still observed by people in many places, especially Tujia people, who view it as a __4__（necessary）to marriage procedure.

It is very much __5__ same in different places of the province. According to elderly people, every bride had to cry at the wedding. __6__ , the bride's neighbors would look down upon __7__ as a poorly cultivated girl and she would become the laughingstock of the village. In fact, there were cases __8__ which the bride was beaten by her mother for not crying at the wedding ceremony.

In a word, crying at wedding is a means by custom to set off the __9__（happy）of the wedding through falsely sorrowful words. However, in the __10__（arrange）marriages of the old days of China, there were indeed quite a lot of brides who cried over their unsatisfactory marriage and even their miserable life.

B

Sailors used to speak of a "Jack" when they meant a flag which was set near the bow of a sailing ship. The flag showed the country __1__ which the ship belonged. The Union Jack became the flag of Great Britain. Australia's flag __2__（have）the Union Jack in the top left hand corner together with the stars of the Southern Cross. They have kept this small part of Britain on

their flag __3__ their country was first settled by people from Britain.

Australia's flag is the same color as the Union Jack—red, white and blue. The act of __4__（join）together is called a "Union". The Union Jack was the name of the flag made when England, Scotland and Ireland joined together __5__（make）one country.

It all began in 1707 when England and Scotland joined together to become one nation. A flag was made __6__（use）two crosses—one for the patron saint of each country. The word "patron" means protector. Many __7__（century）before the English had taken St. George as their patron saint, his emblem（标志）was a red cross on a white background. The Scottish patron saint was St. Andrew. In memory of him, they used a white cross on a blue background. This cross was shaped like the letter "X". The new flag was a __8__（mix）of both flags with two sets of crosses. When Ireland joined England and Scotland in 1800, another cross __9__（add）. St. Patrich's cross of Ireland was red and also shaped like __10__ "X". All three flags made up the Union Jack.

答案解析

Part 1 专项训练

Unit 1

Ⅰ.

1. **said**后面加**that** 考查it为形式主语的主语从句。句意：据说，早期欧洲的纸牌是为娱乐和教育设计的。此处应采用It is said that...这一固定句型。相当于People say that the early European playing-cards were designed for entertainment and education.

2. **hundreds**改为**hundred** 考查数词用法。hundred前面有具体数字three，因而需用单数形式；hundreds of是一个概数，表示“数以百计的”。

3. **taller**改为**tall** 考查倍数表示法。句意：这棵树的高度是那棵树的三倍。表示“……是……倍”，由“倍数+as+形容词原形+as”结构组成。

4. 去掉**a** 考查冠词的用法。weather是不可数名词。

5. **this**改为**it** 考查代词。it可用在句中作形式主语。this不能作形式主语。

6. **it**改为**one** 考查代词。it指代前文提到过的具体的物品，为同一物；one表示泛指，指代前文提到过的物品中的任意的一个。

7. **few**改为**a few** 考查不定代词。根据句中的only一词可以判断，该句意在表示“喜欢音乐的学生只有几个”，因而应采用a few，表示肯定含义。

8. **difficulties**改为**difficulty** 考查不定代词。在表示“做某事有……困难”的句型have/has... difficulty（in）doing sth.中，difficulty为不可数名词。

9. **a**改为**the** 考查冠词。at the moment意为“眼下，目前”，为固定短语。

10. **twelve**改为**twelfth** 考查数词。表示第几用“the+序数词+名

词”或“名词+基数词”表示。

11.

11. **information** 考查构词法。句意：警方得到了大量与该组织相关的有用信息。根据空前a great deal of useful判断空格处应填入名词。a great deal of修饰不可数名词。inform为动词，意为“通知；使活跃，使充满”，其名词形式为information，为不可数名词。

12. **enjoyment** 考查构词法。句意：我对小说不感兴趣，所以我并没有从那本小说里得到多少乐趣。根据空前much可知此处空格需要填入不可数名词。enjoy为动词，其名词形式为enjoyment，意为“乐趣；令人愉快的事”。

13. **distance** 考查构词法。句意：火车站离我们学校两英里路程。根据空前的冠词判断此处需要名词，括号中给出的distant为形容词，意为“遥远的”，其名词形式为distance，意为“距离”。

【拓展】一些以-t 结尾的形容词转化为名词时，应把-t 改为-ce。此类名词往往是不可数名词。例如：different—difference, silent—silence, confident—confidence, important—importance, absent—absence, brilliant—brilliance, intelligent—intelligence等。

14. **interviewee** 考查构词法。句意：应聘者会得到一个机会来展现其信心、工作能力和教育背景。根据空格前the 判断此处需填入名词。interview既可作动词表示“采访；面试”，又可作名词表示“面试”，而此处应该是“被面试者，被接见者”，因此应填入interviewee。注意表示“……者”，一般都是以-er结尾，而表示“被……者”常以-ee结尾，例如：interviewer（面试者，面试官）—interviewee（被面试者，被接见者）；employer（雇主，老板）—employee（员工，受雇者）。

15. **it** 考查形式宾语。句意：要是你能帮我解决这个技术问题，我将非常感激。it可用作形式宾语，指代if you can help me to solve the technical problem。

16. **that** 考查代词。句意：在很多方面，美国的教育体制和英国的教育体制没有多大区别。that指代the education system。代词that可用来代替前面提到的单数名词或不可数名词，但这一名词在第一次出现时须有后置定语，以区别于第二次所指之物，当前面提到的是复数名词，则后面要用those代替。

17. **a** 考查冠词。句意：西班牙是一个欧洲国家。此处表示数量“一个”，且European的音标第一个音是［j］，为辅音，故用a。

18. **that** 考查强调句型（it is... who/that...）。句意：苏珊娜是从1956年开始修建这个花园的。此处强调时间状语，故连接词应用that。

19. **me** 考查代词。句意：这本电子词典不属于我。belong to 中的to为介词，因此后面的代词应使用宾格形式。

20. **agreement** 考查构词法。句意：我父母亲对于房子刷成什么颜色意见一致。此处需用agree的名词形式agreement，in agreement 意为“意见一致”。

21. **has been used** 考查主谓一致和时态语态。句意：每一种可能的方法都已经被用来预防空气污染了，但是天空仍然不明净。本题主语中的名词means是一个单复数同形的名词，要在具体语境中判断是单数还是复数。本句中的形容词every后面通常要接单数名词，根据句意可知，这是已经发生的事情，故使用现在完成时。

22. **is** 考查主谓一致和时态。句意：我已经看完了狄更斯写的这部小说的大部分内容，其余的很难。定语从句中的主语是the rest of which，主语是“the rest of+名词”的时候，谓语取决于其中的名词，这里which指的是the novel，所以谓语是单数，而且“这部分很难”是叙述现在的情况，需用一般现在时。

23. **the; a** 考查冠词。第一个空格指说话双方都知道的才艺表演，需使用定冠词the；第二个空格所在句中success前面加了形容词great，表示“一次巨大成功”，因此属于抽象名词具体化的情况，故应用不定冠词a。

24. **fifties** 考查数词。句意：在20世纪80年代，50多岁的人上大学深造并不罕见。此处为“in one’s fifties”的结构，意为“在某人50多岁的时候”。

25. **to build** 考查形式主语。句意：数以千计的人用了很多年时间修建了长城。此处为It takes sb. some time to do sth.的句型，其中it为形式主语，后面的动词不定式为真实主语。

26. **nothing** 考查不定代词。句意：我知道没有什么能够阻止他；他决不会放弃做一名导演的念头。根据后面提到的never give up可知前面相应地也要用否定性的不定代词nothing。

27. **nineth** 考查序数词。句意：改稿时请特别注意译文的第九段，即最后一段。 根据空前the可以判断此处为序数词。

28. **length** 考查构词法。句意：这座桥是那座桥的三倍长。根据空前的the判断此处需使用名词。这里为倍数表达方式之一：“倍数+the size/length/weight...+of+比较对象”，形容词long对应的名词为length。

29. **Either** 考查不定代词。句意：你可以来访也可以给我打电话，哪个都行。either用作代词，意为“（两者之中）任一，任何一个”。根据所提供的情景You may drop in or just give me a call.可判断，这里只有两种可能性，其中的任何一种都是可以的。

30. **safety** 考查构词法。句意：我们应该尽一切努力防止校园暴力的发生，因为如果学生的个人安全没有保障，越来越多的学生会辍学。根据their personal判断后面需用名词。

III.

31. **B** 考查代词。句意：许多西方人把给亲戚朋友买中国礼物当成了一个惯例。此处it作形式宾语，真实宾语为后面的动词不定式，其中a rule是名词充当宾语补足语。

32. **C** 考查分数表达和主谓一致。句意：那个区五分之二的地方覆盖着树木和草。分子大于1时，分母需用复数；“分数+of+名词”充当主语时，谓语单复数取决于of后面的名词的单复数。

33. **B** 考查名词。句意：——请给我一杯咖啡。——你是喜欢原味咖啡还是加奶的？coffee一般是不可数的，需要借助相应量词，例如：a cup of coffee，但在口语中，也可直接用coffee表示“一杯咖啡”，此时为可数名词。

34. **D** 考查零冠词和定冠词。句意：我知道你不是很喜欢音乐，但你觉得昨天我们看的那部电影里的音乐怎样？第一空后的music为泛指，故不填冠词；第二个music被定语in the film we saw yesterday所修饰，特指电影中的音乐，故要用定冠词。解答此题的关键在于把握语境，应具体情况具体分析，避免定势思维。

35. **D** 考查冠词的用法。句意：汤姆又一次犯了同一个错误，他在单词“government”中漏掉一个“n”。一般来说，序数词需与定冠词the连用，表示“第几，第几个”，但有时序数词也可以和不定冠词连用，表示“再一个（次），又一个（次）”的意思，相当于another。

36. **C** 考查冠词。句意：刘老师负责我们班，王老师负责二班。be in charge of意为“负责；管理；掌控”, be in the charge of意为“由……负

责，管理”。

37. **D** 考查主谓一致和时态。句意：工厂使用了这种原材料的65%，剩余部分节省下来作为他用。定语从句中先行词是the raw materials，故定语从句应与先行词的数一致，用复数，上文时态为过去时，故选D。

38. **A** 考查冠词及主谓一致。句意：这位诗人兼画家明天下午会来跟我们讲中国文学和绘画方面的内容。由时间状语tomorrow afternoon判断，此处应用现在进行时表将来，故排除C、D两项。a poet and artist指一位诗人兼画家，谓语动词用单数，故选A项。此题形式上考查主谓一致和时态，但解题的关键在于把握与冠词相关的知识。

39. **C** 考查不定代词的用法。句意：上学期我们举行了一次野餐，很有趣，所以这个月我们再举行一次吧。the other意为“（两者中的）另外一个”；some意为“一些”；another意为“再一，又一个”；other意为“别的，其他的”，四个选项中只有another符合题意。

40. **D** 考查倍数表达法。句意：据报道，这个国家使用的能源是整个欧洲的3倍。此处使用了倍数表达固定句型：“...倍数+as+形容词（或形容词+名词）或副词+as...”。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：文章以描述西蒙娜的生活为例，介绍了一些与line 有关的短语。

41. **meanings** 考查名词构词法及复数。根据空格前的many 判断，应填mean的名词复数形式meanings。

42. **yours** 考查代词。此处为双重所有格，意为“你的一个朋友”，故应填入名词性物主代词。

43. **a** 考查冠词。“一次晋升”即a promotion。

44. **activities** 考查名词复数。根据指示代词these 判断，应填入acitivity的复数形式。

45. **behavior** 考查名词构词法。根据空前this 判断，此处应填入动词behave的名词单数形式。

46. **expression**考查名词构词法。根据空前this 判断为此处应填入名词，且为单数形式或不可数名词。

47. **One** 考查代词。根据前文has two meanings和后文The other meaning of walk...可知，此处应填入One。此处为one... the other...的搭配。

48. **choices** 考查名词构词法以及复数形式。根据空前two very different判断，此处应填入choose的名词复数形式choices。

49. **it** 考查代词。此处it 为形式宾语，真实宾语为动词不定式to be true。 这是“find+it+形容词”的结构。

50. **myself** 考查反身代词。此处反身代词作动词find的宾语。

Unit 2

I.

1. **back**后面加**to** 考查介词搭配。句意：只有当你对世界微笑，世界才会回以你微笑。smile back to sb.意为“对某人回以微笑”。

2. 去掉**but** 考查并列连词。句意：虽然她神态自若地望着我，我却看得出她心里很是困惑。though和but 不能连用，故可以删去but。

3. 在**listened**后面加介词**to** 考查动词与介词搭配。句意：逐渐地，我意识到了英语的重要性，因此我每天早早起床听英语录音。listen为不及物动词，接宾语需使用介词to，listen to 即“听……”。

4. **against**加**be** 考查介词用法。句意：一切似乎都与我作对，但我设法克服了所有的困难。against为介词，此处误用为动词。be against sth.意为“与某物作对”。

5. **with**改为**to** 考查动词与介词的搭配。marry后只能跟介词to。

6. **to**改为**off** 考查介词用法。to表示“不在一个范围内，也不接壤”；off表示“在一个范围内但不接壤”。

7. **while**改为**when** 考查并列连词。当when跟在所引导的从句后面时，when有“突然”的意思；而while无此意。此处为be doing... when...的句型。

8. 去掉**for** 考查动词与介词的搭配。search for意为“寻找，搜寻（某物）”，其中的for引出搜寻的目标；search sb./some place 意为“搜身,手插某处”。本句的意思是“警察搜查村子”。

9. **like**改为**as** 考查动词与介词的搭配。work as意为“担任……的职务”，为固定搭配。

10. **is**后加**of** 考查介词短语。be动词后如果跟抽象名词，在be动词和抽象名词之间加of，构成“be of+抽象名词”结构，含义上相当于“be+形容词”。

II.

11. **by** 考查介词用法。句意：让我们感到惊讶的是，石油每桶又涨了两美元。表示上升或下降的幅度需用介词by。

12. **at** 考查介词用法。句意：遇到任何危险大卫都会保持自己的最佳状态，但在那一刻他却愣住了。这里用介词短语at one's best表示“（健康、情绪、才能、竞技等）处于最佳状态，处于全盛时期”。

13. **beyond** 考查介词短语。句意：他所遇到的事是他无法控制的，因此他不得不向警方求助。beyond one's control 意为“超出某人的控制”。

14. **within** 考查介词短语。句意：在公共场所为残疾人提供的设备应便于触及。within reach意为“在够得着的范围之内”。

15. **to** 考查动词与介词的搭配。句意：这篇文章的目的是引起公众对这个问题的关注。draw one's attention to意为“引起……的注意”。

16. **and** 考查并列连词。句意：用功并且用恰当的方法学习英语，你就会发现不难学习它了。此处为“祈使句+and+分句”句型，意思是“做……，就会……”。

17. **has been changed** 考查not only... but also...并列结构。句意：到目前为止，不仅开关，连那些老化了的电路都已经更换了。 根据up to now判断本句为现在完成时态。由连词or, neither... or..., either... or..., not only... but also..., nor等连接的并列主语，谓语动词的单复数形式按邻近原则，与贴近它的主语一致。主语与change 之间是被动关系，所以此处填入has been changed。

18. **with** 考查with复合结构。句意：你不知道在脚受伤如此严重的情况下，她是如何完成接力赛的。

19. **But** 考查并列连词。句意：——有人打电话找你。——可没有人知道我在这里啊！but 引出下文，表示惊讶、难以置信、拒绝或抗议。

20. **of** 考查动词与介词的搭配。句意：于是，她只是对他表示欢迎，并且提醒说他们上次见过面。remind sb. of sth.是固定搭配。

III.

21. **C** 句意：对不起，夫人。你最好明天来，因为现在已经超过探视时间了。beyond意为“超过，超出”。

22. **B** 考查介词短语辨析。句意：这张表格除了你自己，任何人都不能在上面签字。rather than意为“而不是”；other than“除……之外”；more than“多于；不仅仅是”；better than“优于，比……好”。

23. **D** 考查have difficulty（in）doing sth. 的变式运用。difficulty在句中充当先行词，其后为定语从句。

24. **D** 考查介词固定搭配。句意：尼克，你启程去中国之前看一些有关中国的书会有好处。in意为“在……里面”；for意为“为了……”；of意为“……的”；on意为“关于”，根据句意可知，应选D项。

25. **D** 考查介词短语的含义。此处far from意为“远非”。句意：她对此一点儿也不满意，她很生气。free from意为“免于”； free of意为“免于，不受……影响”；out of意为“在……之外；从……出来”。

26. **C** 考查并列连词。此题容易误选A，因为空格后的句子是用以说明I’m sorry的原因的，所以便想当然地认为要选for来表示原因。事实上，I’m sorry后面习惯上不接表示原因的连词for，而接表示转折的连词but（也可省略but），用以委婉地提出一个使对方不快的事实。又如：I’m sorry, but I have to disagree. 对不起，我不敢苟同。注：I’m sorry 后虽然不能接表原因的连词for，但却可接介词for。如：I’m sorry for shouting at you. 对不起，我冲你嚷嚷了。

27. **A** 考查并列连词。句意：在学校，一些学生很活跃，而一些却很害羞，然而他们可能彼此成为好朋友。根据句意选while，表示两个分句中两种情况的对比。作并列连词时，when/while用法较为特殊，也是高考常考点。二者区别是while表两相对照；而when 意为“这时（突然）”，主要用于某一动作突然发生于另一动作正在进行或刚要发生之时。此时的when可以与副词suddenly连用，也可以不与之连用，但值得注意的是，不能单独用suddenly 来代替when表突然。

28. **C** 考查并列连词。句意：此次不愉快的用餐之后，汤姆和他父母都不愿意再去这家餐馆了。Neither... nor...表示“两者都不”，符合题意，故选C。Both... and... 表示“两者都”；Either... or... 表示“要么……要么……”；Not only... but also... 表示“不但……而且……”。

29. **D** 考查并列连词。句意：你已经两次没有通过考试了。你最好开始更加努力学习，否则你会无法毕业。or意为“否则，要不然”，填入句中符合语境，故为答案。

30. **D** 考查介词短语辨析。句意：这套家具款式新潮，色泽明丽，与新式房屋和花园配套，但看起来与传统的房子和花园不相称。out of

place意为“与……不相称”，符合句意，故本题选D。out of question意为“毫无疑问”，out of order意为“次序颠倒”，out of sight意为“看不见”，都与句意不符。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：文章讲述了一位集邮爱好者终于得到梦寐以求的一张稀有邮票的故事。

31. **from** 考查介词。此处意为“来自许多国家的邮票”，需使用介词from。

32. **On** 考查介词。由his birthday可知，此处为具体的一天，故应使用介词on。

33. **to** 考查介词。此处意为“从1954年到2014年”，故应使用介词词组from A to B，意为“从A到B”。

34. **for** 考查介词。由上文It was very hard to find（它难以找到）可知，此处应为“他四处寻找这张邮票”，故需使用动词短语look for，意为“寻找，寻求”。

35. **But** 考查并列连词。此处是说，他向亲友寻求帮助，但是没有人能找到这张邮票，所以他很难过，故此处应表达转折关系，需使用But。

36. **and** 考查并列连词。此处为祈使条件句，即“祈使句+and/or+陈述句”。

37. **to** 考查介词。此处为动词短语write to...，意为“给某人写信”。

38. **On** 考查介词。根据常识可知，邮票是贴在信封上面的，“在……上面”，需使用介词on，因为在句首，首字母需大写。

39. **at** 考查介词。此处为动词短语look at，意为“盯着看……”。

40. **and** 考查并列连词。此处friends（朋友）和patience（耐心）为并列关系，故使用并列连词and。

Unit 3

I.

1. **greatly改为great** 考查形容词。make great progress意为“取得重大进步”，progress为名词，需用形容词修饰。

2. **great改为greatly** 考查副词。此处是副词作状语，修饰现在分词improving。

3. **warmly改为warm** 考查形容词。此处是keep的复合结构，即“keep+宾语+形容词”。

4. **frequent改为frequently** 考查副词。此处是副词作状语，修饰动名词Talking。

5. **good改为well**考查形容词。表示“身体好”用形容词well（健康的）。

6. **more改为larger** 考查比较级。表示“人口比……多或少”，形容词只能用larger/smaller。

7. **possibly改为possible** 考查比较级。as... as possible 意为“尽可能……地”，为固定句型。

8. **exciting改为excited** 考查形容词。过去分词形式的形容词excited作表语意为“感到兴奋的”；现在分词形式的形容词exciting作表语意为“令人高兴的”。该句中，孩子们得知父母将回国感到很高兴，故应使用excited。

9. 去掉**more** 考查比较级。比较级前可以用much, even, far, a lot, a great deal等词修饰。redder本身为比较级，无需使用more。

10. **deeply改为deep** 考查副词。deep的意思是“深”，表示空间深度，有具体的含义；deeply时常表示感情上的深度，“深深地”，有抽象含义。

II.

11. **Luckily; badly** 考查副词。句意：在街角出了一起事故，幸运的

是，这个小女孩受伤不严重。第一空修饰全句需用副词，第二空修饰过去分词hurt也要用副词。

12. **longest** 考查比较级。句意：黄河是我国第二长河。根据the second和in our country 确定应该填入long的最高级。“the+序数词+形容词最高级”表示“第几……”。

13. **anything** 考查形容词修饰不定代词。句意：对这件事他一无所知，因此我认为他不会告诉我们什么重要的事情。不定代词与形容词连用需后置，否定句中应该用anything而不是something。

14. **more dangerous；most dangerous** 考查比较级和最高级。句意：大多数学生认为狮子比熊更加危险，觉得它是世界上最危险的动物。

15. **deeply**考查副词。句意：教室里的所有学生都被他的故事深深地感动了。此处是副词作状语，修饰动词touch。deep也有副词词性，但是表示物理空间上的深度，而deeply表示情感方面的深度。

16. **tired**考查形容词作状语。句意：他们在雪地里待了几天，又冷又累。形容词或形容词短语可以作状语，表示结果和状态等。

17. **as** 考查倍数表达法。这里的倍数是twice，由expensive这一原级可知，这里使用了as... as...这一比较结构，在具体的语境中，后面的一个as以及后面的成分可以承前省略，即这里的expensive后面省略了as ours。

18. **interested**考查be interested in的搭配。句意：不是所有顾客对金融细节感兴趣。

19. **Fortunately**考查评注性副词作状语。考查形容词。句意：幸运的是，我及时赶上了面试。

20. **frightened; frightening; frightened**考查以-ing, -ed结尾的形容词的区别。句意：受惊的孩子们以惊恐的眼神看着那可怕的海啸。frightened意为“感到害怕的”，frightening 意为“令人感到害怕的”。 -ed形容词可以修饰voice, expression, look等名词，表示透过某人的声音和表情而显示出某人的内心感受。

III.

21. **D** 考查多个形容词作定语的排列顺序。句意：尤克里里是夏威

夷的一种小型乐器，有点像吉他。当名词前面有几个形容词作修饰语时，一般按下列次序排列：限定词+描绘形容词+形状+大小+颜色+国籍+原材料。

22. **A** 考查比较级。句意：——我得说，这部电影一点都不令人感兴趣。——但我觉得这可比我看过的电影有趣多了。程度副词可修饰形容词比较级，放于比较级前。根据应答者说的but...可以判断，此处应答者与前面一位说话者的看法不同，应选A。

23. **A** 考查形容词作状语以及动词的-ed与-ing形式在句中的用法区别。句意：经过长途旅行，史密斯夫妇安全地返回了家，很劳累。根据题干意义可知，空格部分是用来补充说明句子主语是怎样的，故选用形容词作状语，表示“人感到累”应用tired，由于选项是两个意义不一致的形容词，故用转折连词but 连接。实际上，该句相当于...the Smiths returned home and they were safe but tired。

24. **D** 考查形容词与副词用法。句意：我并不介意一条猎狗的嗅觉好不好，但我的确不希望它的气味难闻。此题容易误选B，认为两个smell 均为系动词，后接形容词作表语。事实上，句中的第一个smell为实义动词，意为“闻气味”，smell badly意为“嗅觉差”；第二个smell为系动词，意为“闻起来（有某种气味）”，smell bad意为“闻起来气味难闻”。

25. **A** 考查倍数的表达方式。句意：当你研究当地的地图时，你会发现这座城镇是那个城镇的两倍大。表示倍数可以用：A is+倍数+the+名词（如size/length）+of B，因而A项正确。B项中不定冠词位置错误，正确的应为twice as large a town as that；C、D项中as后应用形容词原级。

26. **C** 考查隐含式比较级。由Yes可知，“我从未参加过（比这个晚会）更令人兴奋的晚会。”指晚会是“令人兴奋的”，排除选项A和B；由语境可知是隐含式比较级：以往经历过的任何一次与这一次晚会相比，排除D。

27. **B** 考查形容词相关表达。容易误选A或C，因为汉语中的“如果你方便的话”直译为if you are convenient或if you feel convenient。最佳答案为B，因为英语中的convenient不是表示“感到方便的”，而是表示“使人感到方便的”，所以be convenient的主语通常不能是“人”。要表示“如果你方便的话”，英语通常采用if it is convenient for/to you，其中的介词可用for或to，一般不用with。顺便说一句，偶尔也可见到用人或物作be convenient的主语，但此时的句子必须具备这样的特点：句子主语是其

后不定式的逻辑宾语，如：

Mary is convenient to see on Sunday./It is convenient to see Mary on Sunday. 星期天去见玛丽较为方便。

28. **C** 考查副词词义辨析。句意：庆幸的是，我终于打完了比赛，其中的辛苦没有白费。hopefully充满希望地；normally正常地；thankfully庆幸地；conveniently方便地。根据句意，选C。

29. **A** 考查副词辨析。句意：在冰场上玩耍听起来很有趣。不过，会不会很危险呢？根据前后两句之前是明显的转折关系，所以选择though。有些副词还可以作连词，作副词时常放在句末。如：though,（ever）since, in case等。例如：He is old. He works hard, though.=Though he is old, he works hard. 虽然他年事已高，但他工作还是很努力。

30. **A** 考查形容词词义辨析。所填词作表语，主语是人，由more来修饰，意思是“可能”，选A。其中四个选项中possible和probable也都有“可能的”之意，但它们作表语时主语只能是物，sure在此处意思不恰当。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：越来越多的公司送员工去学校深造。

31. **attractive** 考查形容词构词。此处应为形容词作表语。

32. **to use** 考查非谓语动词。中心词被形容词最高级或者序数词修饰，后面一般用动词不定式作定语。

33. **fully** 考查副词构词。此处副词作状语修饰动词。

34. **better** 考查形容词比较级。根据后文内容可知暗含比较。

35. **especially** 考查副词构词。此处副词作状语修饰动词。

36. **absolutely** 考查副词构词。此处副词作状语修饰动词。

37. **more** 考查形容词比较级。根据后文more knowledge, more mentoring可知，此处空格需填入more，与后面的内容并列。

38. **successful** 考查形容词构词。根据空格前的be 判断应填入success的形容词。

39. **However** 考查连接副词。根据上下文可知此处为转折关系。

40. **more important** 考查形容词比较级。根据后文than the minuses可知，此处应使用比较级。the pluses意为“有利之处”，the minuses意思是“不利之处”。

Unit 4

I.

1. **last** 改为**stay** 考查动词用法。last和stay都有“持续”的意思，但last是不及物动词，后面不能跟形容词；stay可以用作系动词，后面可以跟形容词、名词或副词。

2. **traveled**改为**was traveling** 考查时态。该句是说“当他看到飞碟时，飞碟正在由东向西飞行”，应使用过去进行时。

3. 在**read**前加**have** 考查时态。由You’ll get to like the novel和for several times可知，此处应使用完成时。

4. 第二个**done**前加**been** 考查语态。根据句意“一切能做的都已经做了”，应使用被动语态。

5. 去掉**will** 考查时态。主句为将来时态时（祈使句和情态动词也表示将来），条件状语从句、时间状语从句和让步状语从句用一般时态表示将来。

6. **buying**改为**bought** 考查时态。and连接的并列动词时态应该一致。

7. 去掉**was** 考查语态。happen为不及物动词，无被动语态。

8. **caught**改为**had** 考查动词用法。catch为非延续性动词。非延续性动词的完成时不能与表示一段时间的内容连用。如果句子中有表示一段时间的词，就要把非延续性动词改为延续性动词。

9. **about** 改为**across** 考查动词短语。句意：如果你懂得构词法，那么你在初次碰到很多词的时候会学得更快。根据语境此处应为come across，意为“偶遇，偶然碰到”。 come about意为“发生”。

10. **since**改为**for**或者**months**后面加**ago** 考查时态。since后面加时间点，for后面跟时间段。

II.

11. **are being washed**考查时态、语态和主谓一致。谓语应与quantity

的形式一致，故本句应使用复数谓语are，且用被动语态形式；根据前文的being destroyed，可判定为被动进行时态。

12. **feels** 考查连系动词。此题容易填is felt，想当然地根据“这布料摸起来很柔软”这一句意，认为“布料”应是“被摸”。但feel 在此为系动词，系动词均不能用于被动语态。

13. **was offered** 考查被动语态。根据问句Why did you leave that position?可确定应使用一般过去时，was offered是被动语态，表示被提供。

14. **hasn’t been cleaned** 考查时态和语态。根据The window is dirty和短语for weeks可确定正确答案为被动语态的现在完成时。

15. **hadn’t heard** 考查过去完成时态。根据for six months 判断，应使用完成时态。由until then 可知为“过去的过去”，即过去完成时。

16. **than** 考查No sooner... than...的结构。No sooner... than... 意为“一……就……”。

17. **am filling** 考查时态。句意：——喂，我们去滑冰吧！——对不起，我现在很忙，我正在填写一份新的工作申请表。根据句意可知本句是在叙述说话时正在发生的事情，所以应使用现在进行时。

18. **will check** 考查一般将来时。句意：——现在几点了？——我不知道。可是请你稍等，我现在就帮你看一下。check这一动作尚未发生，应使用将来时。

19. **is found** 考查被动语态。句意：除非找到额外的投资，否则这家剧院就将被关闭。本句中unless引导的是一个条件状语从句，主句使用了一般将来时，从句应使用一般现在时代替一般将来时。根据句意可知money 和find构成被动关系，所以用被动语态。

20. **stayed** 考查时态。句意：——很久没有看见你了！你到哪里去了？——我去了宁夏，并在那里待了一年时间，做支教。本句只是叙述我过去在宁夏待了一年，没有强调过去发生的事情对现在的影响，而且也没有持续到现在，所以使用一般过去时即可。

21. **have been cutting**考查时态。句意：——托尼，为什么你的眼睛那么红啊？——在过去的的5分钟里，我一直都在切辣椒。根据句意可知本句表示在过去的一段时间里一直都在做某事，所以应使用现在完成进行时表示动作的持续性和反复性。

22. **would buy** 考查时态。句意：他们决定，一旦拉里换了工作，

他们就买一所新房子。考查过去将来时。他们是在过去决定一个将要发生的事情，所以应使用过去将来时。

23. **has cleaned** 考查时态。句意：——看！有人已经清理了沙发。——嗯，不是我，我没有做。由句意可知，“清理了沙发”强调结果和影响，因此应使用完成时。

24. **tastes**考查系动词。taste在此用作连系动词，后接形容词作表语，在这一结构中，taste常用一般现在时的主动形式表示被动意义。

25. **will/shall be flying** 考查将来进行时。根据At this time tomorrow判断，谓语动词应使用将来进行时。

26. **weighs** 考查动词用法。根据The bag over there is so big that...中is所使用的一般现在时可知，“重达”六十千克也需用一般现在时，以确保前后句子时态相呼应。另外，weigh意为“重达……”，是一个不及物动词，没有被动语态和进行时态。

27. **hired** 考查时态。由于这是一个由since引导的时间状语从句，主句用现在完成时，从句需用一般过去时。

28. **has been translated** 考查时态。句意：《百年孤独》，一部关于一个七代哥伦比亚家族的世界著名小说，自从1967年以来已经被翻译成37种语言。句子的主语One Hundred Years of Solitude和translate之间是被动关系，又因为“since+过去时间点”用于现在完成时，所以此处应使用现在完成时态的被动语态。

29. **didn’t realize** 考查时态。根据Excuse me可知“我”现在已经意识到了（realize）我正挡着你的路，所以没有意识到（not realize）这个动作应该发生在过去，明显是刚刚发生的动作，应使用一般过去时。

30. **will be watching**考查时态。根据句中时间状语this afternoon可知，此处应用将来时，再根据语意，此处表示在1点半这个时刻琼将正在看《哈利·波特与魔法石》，因此表示将来的某个点或段时间正在进行的动作，应使用将来进行时。

III.

31. **C**考查It is said/believed that...句型，在该句型中it 作形式主语，真正的主语是后面的that从句。

32. **B** 考查时态。句意：在遭受洪水袭击的地区，食物供给快没

了。我们必须赶在（食物）耗尽之前立刻行动起来。从句子后半句我们可以知道受灾区食物还有少许，还没有到山穷水尽的地步，只是所剩已经不多，所以可以用现在进行时表示“即将”。另外，run out这个词组没有被动语态形式，故不选D。

33. **D** 考查时态。句意：这对已经完成了家庭作业的双胞胎被允许在操场上打羽毛球。根据句意可知他们完成作业是在被允许到操场上打羽毛球之前，被允许打羽毛球已经使用了一般过去时，所以完成作业应该使用过去完成时，故D正确。

34. **B**考查将来时的表达法。现在进行时代替将来时表示按照计划安排要发生的事情。用一般现在时代替将来时表示按照机场、车站的时间表要发生的事情。本题第一空是指按照安排要发生的事情，第二空指按照时刻表要发生的事情，故B正确。

35. **D**考查时态。第一个空表示动作从过去某一时间开始一直延续到现在，并且有可能持续下去，故用现在完成进行时；第二个空表示自过去某一时刻到说话时这段时间中的经历，用现在完成时。

36. **D** 考查时态和语态。在条件句和时间状语从句中，使用一般现在时代替将来时，主句用将来时。

37. **D** 考查动词短语辨析及have sth. done这一固定用法。由You look upset. What’s the matter?（你看上去有些心烦意乱。发生什么事了？）可判断，答语中应是说“我”的建议又被“拒绝了”。turn over意为“翻转；移交”；turn on意为“打开（电视机、电灯等）；接通（电流、煤气、水等）”；turn off意为“关掉（电流、煤气、水等）；拐弯”；turned down意为“拒绝；把……调低，关小”，D项符合题意，故为答案。

38. **D** 考查动词短语的词义辨析。此组选项的特点是“不同的动词+相同的副词”。句意：为了取得更好的成绩，考试前你应该再复习一下笔记。go over意为“复习”，符合句意。get over 意为“恢复；克服”；turn over意为“翻转；移交”；take over意为“接管”。

39. **A** 考查动词短语搭配。句意：大多数家长认为教育很重要。他们会尽全力给他们的孩子那份无价的礼物。attach much importance to意为“认为……很重要”符合题意，故选A。pay... to... 意为“将……付给……”；link... to... 意为“把……与……联系起来”；apply... to...意为“将……应用于……”。

40. **A** 考查动词辨析。句意：两位律师就这项法律的准确含义进行了几分钟的辩论。argue意为“争论，辩论”，符合题意，故选A。discuss

意为“讨论，探讨”；quarrel意为“争吵”；fight意为“战斗；搏斗，打斗”。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：文章讲述了中国传统节日“七夕”的来历和现状。

41. **is crying** 考查时态。根据上文提到的If it rains heavily on the Qixi Festival判断此处空格应为现在进行时。

42. **was** 考查时态。根据Long, long ago和下文的时态可以判断，此处的there be句型应使用一般过去时。

43. **was driven**考查时态。根据上下文可知句子为一般过去时态，又由by his sister-in-law可知为被动语态。

44. **had just escaped** 考查过去完成时的被动语态。根据语境判断为“过去的过去”。

45. **has been celebrated** 考查现在完成时的被动语态。根据since the Han Dynasty判断应使用完成时，而the tale和celebrate之间为被动关系，故使用被动语态。

46. **was told** 考查一般过去时态的被动语态。根据from the Classic of Poetry可知，应用过去时，which指代the tale，与tell构成动宾关系，故需用被动语态。

47. **falls** 考查一般现在时态。 此处描述一般情况，应使用一般现在时。

48. **has been handed down** 考查现在完成时的被动语态。根据for generations可知，此处强调对后世的影响，应使用完成时。主语story和hand down构成被动关系，应使用被动语态。

49. **will live** 考查一般将来时态。根据上下文判断，此处表示将来的情况，应使用将来时。

50. **is referred to** 根据nowadays判断应使用一般现在时态。Qixi和refer to 之间是被动关系。

Unit 5

I.

1. **Seen改为Seeing** 考查分词作状语。see与句子主语my parents and I是主动关系，因此应用现在分词作状语。

2. **sit后面加on** 考查不定式作定语。如果不定式为不及物动词，其后应有必要的介词。当动词与介词连用时，常位于“形容词+动词不定式”结构的末尾。

3. **去掉and，或者Working改为Work** 考查句子结构。若改为前者，working hard是现在分词作条件状语；若改为后者，整个句子变为祈使条件句。

4. **not后面加to** 考查不定式的省略。not to为not to do it 的省略形式。可以只用to这个词，而不必重复整个不定式词组。

5. **left改为leaving，或者在left前面加and或者which** 考查句子结构。若改为leaving，为分词作结果状语；若加and则改为了并列句；加which则为非限制性定语从句。

6. **made后面加to** 考查使役动词。make作使役动词时，主动语态中后接不带to 的动词不定式，当其用于被动语态时，to 不可省略。

7. **dressing改为dressed** 考查过去分词短语作定语。表示“穿着什么衣服”用wearing或（be）dressed（in）或dressing oneself。

8. **staying改为to stay** 考查不定式充当主补。此处应为be asked to do sth.的结构，其主动语态形式为ask sb. to do sth.，应当使用不定式充当补语。

9. **locking改为locked** 考查过去分词作宾补。此处为“keep sb.+分词”的结构，由was rescued by the police（被警方营救）这一信息可知，me和lock之间是被动关系，即“被锁”，因此应用过去分词locked。

10. **read改为reading** 考查动名词作介词宾语。access to短语中的to为介词，故应用动名词作宾语。

II.

11. ① **was called** 考查时态和语态。句意：她告诉我这本书被称作《傲慢与偏见》，本句中call为宾语从句的谓语动词，为被动语态，故应为was called。

② **called** 考查非谓语动词。句意：她主演了一部被称作《凯特琳娜》的电视剧，本句中call修饰play，充当其后置定语，应使用过去分词called，相当于which is called...

12. ① **consisting** 考查非谓语动词。句意：我们已经准备了简单的饭菜，主要是米饭和蔬菜。 根据句中逗号判断，consist of与a simple dish之间是主动关系，故此处是现在分词短语作后置定语，相当于定语从句which consists of rice and vegetables。

② **consists of** 考查时态和语态。句意：我们准备饭菜很容易，因为主要是米饭和蔬菜。句子有because，因此是原因状语从句，根据主句时态判断从句也应该是一般现在时态。此外，consist of意为“由……组成”，没有被动语态的形式。

13. ① **Knowing/To know** 考查非谓语动词作主语。句意：了解基本的急救技能将有助于你对紧急事件做出迅速反应。动词不能直接作主语，因此需要变为动名词或者动词不定式。

② **Know** 考查祈使条件句。句意：如果了解基本的急救技能，你就会对紧急事件做出迅速反应。此处是“祈使句+and+陈述句”的结构，祈使句相当于条件状语从句。

14. ① **built** ② **being built** ③ **to be built** 考查非谓语动词作后置定语。 三个句子的逻辑主语都是The bridge，与build 之间是被动关系，分别根据in 2012，now和next year判断非谓语动词形式。

15. ① **Seeing** ② **Seen**考查非谓语动词作状语。分别根据两个句子的逻辑主语I/the city与see之间的关系，前者是主动，后者是被动关系。

16. ① **to be told** ② **destroying** 考查非谓语动词作结果状语。only to do 的意思是“不料（却）……，结果（却）……”，表示一个没有料到的结果。doing 的意思是“结果就……”，表示一个意料之中的结果。

17. ① **finished** ② **to do** ③ **going** 考查with的复合结构。根据三个句子句意判断，finish与work之间构成被动关系，因此需用过去分词作定语；不定式表示尚未发生的动作，因此第二句中应使用不定式；price与go up为主动关系，故应使用现在分词。

18. ① **Faced** ② **Facing** 考查非谓语动词作状语。两句含义一致，句意：面对困难，我通常选择参考相关的学习资料或是网页。（be）faced

with意为“面对”；faced with=facing。

19. ① **told** 句意：虽然被告之有危险，他仍然冒生命危险去救那个孩子。② **waiting** 句意： 当我在公共汽车站点等车的时候，我听到身后有人大喊救命。两个题目均考查“连词+非谓语动词”结构，逻辑主语分别是he和I，与tell of和wait之间分别是被动和主动关系。

20. ① **Climbing; dropped** 前者考查现在分词作状语，逻辑主语是I，两者为主动关系；后者考查时态和语态，dropped和seized, give一起作并列谓语动词② **stretching** 考查现在分词作伴随状语，句子中picked up, climbed up和placed为先后发生的并列动作，充当并列谓语动词，而stretching是与placed这一个动作同时发生的动作，表示伴随，充当其伴随状语。

21. ① **To make**考查非谓语动词。句意：为了更方便地联系到我们，你最好随身带着这张卡片。根据句意可知，这里是目的状语，表目的用动词不定式。② **Ordered**考查过去分词作状语。句意：（因为）那些书是一周多之前订的，现在随时有可能送到。books和order是动宾关系，即order books/books are ordered，故用过去分词表示被动和完成，在此相当于原因状语从句because they were ordered...

22. ① **smoking** 考查动名词作宾语。此处是allow doing 的结构。② **to go** 考查动词不定式作宾语补足语。此处是allow sb. to do sth.的结构。③ **to smoke** 考查动词不定式作主语补足语。即allow sb. to do 的被动语态形式：sb. be allowed to do。

23. ① **stopping** ② **to find** 考查非谓语动词作结果状语。非谓语动词作结果状语一般位于句末，前面往往有逗号。only to do表示一个没有料到的结果，（only）doing表示一个意料之中的结果。

24. ① **cry; to cry** 考查非谓语动词作补足语。句意：以前他经常让他妹妹哭，现如今他经常被他妹妹弄哭。make sb. do sth.表示让某人做某事，变为被动语态时，其结构为be made to do sth.表示被迫做某事。② **to give** 考查动词不定式作目的状语。句意：在以前，爸爸自制一些蜡烛照明。此题容易误填give，此处make 意为“制造”，而不是使役动词“使，让”，故应填不定式to give，表示目的。

25. **hidden**考查过去分词短语作后置定语。句意：汤姆眼含泪水，喊出了多年埋藏在心里的话。words与hide之间为被动关系，根据for years可知是完成，故填过去分词。

26. **doing** 考查现在分词短语充当伴随状语。句意：别坐在那里什么

也不做，过来帮我收拾餐桌。语境为两个祈使句，省略了主语you，而you 和do 之间是主动关系，和sit是伴随关系。

27. **to breathe**考查动词不定式。句意：我喜欢夏天起大早，早上的空气呼吸起来很好。此处为固定句型：sb./sth.+be+adj.+to do...，这个句型中不定式是主动表被动，这样的形容词是easy/hard/difficult时，后面的不定式使用主动形式表示被动含义。

28. **walking** 句意：你很难想象我们在大雪中步行回家遇到的困难。这是have difficulty doing sth.这一结构的延伸，把句型中的difficulty 作为主句imagine的宾语，后面用一个定语从句we had修饰，其他部分保持不变，故填入walking。还原回普通句：we had difficulty walking home in the snowstorm.

29. **interested**考查过去分词作宾语补足语。句意：他很受学生欢迎，因为他总是努力使他们对他的课感兴趣。此处是“make+宾语+补足语”的结构。

30. **being**考查独立主格结构。句意：由于会议室里挤满了人，他只有站着。根据句中逗号判断前面部分为独立主格结构。the meeting room和very crowded是主谓关系，故为being。 此题容易误填was。

III.

31. **B** 考查with的复合结构。句意：——快，关于这个项目，给我些建议吧！——不好意思，我脑袋里满是工作，我快不行了。so much work与fill是主动关系，故选择B。此处也可表达为：so much work full of my mind。

32. **B** 考查分词作定语。句意：可怜的孩子！他害怕的表情和颤抖的双手暗示着他很害怕。此句中的look是名词，为“表情”之意，当修饰表情等词时用-ed形式的分词，tremble是不及物动词，是“颤抖的”意思，与被修饰词hand 是主动关系所以用-ing形式的分词充当定语，故选B项。单个分词作定语需要放在所修饰的词前面。

33. **A** 考查动名词作宾语。句意：我们公司所有员工都在考虑去市中心看时装秀。consider doing表示“考虑做某事”，故选A项。

34. **A** 考查特殊结构。句意：从技术上说，这款新的设计要比任何其他早期的同类设计要好。speaking常与某些副词连用，作插入语，如generally speaking, strictly speaking等，故选A。

35. **B** 考查动名词作宾语。句意：玛丽完成她的绘画后，继续帮着班里其他人。go on doing sth.意为“继续（干某事），持续不断地（干某事）”，表示一直在做某事，没有做其他事；go on to do sth. 表示“继续做另外一件事”，故选B项。

36. **B** 考查固定短语。句意：试图劝他戒烟是没有用的，他不会听的！It is no use doing sth．为固定用法，意为“做……是没用的”；try to do sth.意为“试图做某事”。故选B项。

37. **B** 考查动词不定式短语作定语。句意：学期结束前我还有很多书要看。have something to do意为“有事情要做”，这里的不定式表示将来，是尚未发生的动作。

38. **A** 考查动名词作宾语。句意：根据美国最近的一项调查，孩子一个星期花在看电视上的时间高达25小时。spend some time（in）doing sth.意为“花费时间做某事”，介词in可以省略，相当于spend some time on sth.，故A正确。

39. **B** 考查非谓语动词。句意：新发现的证据导致这名罪犯被判处5年监禁。lead to导致，to为介词，故后面应接动名词充当宾语；sb.与doing之间是被动关系，所以用being done的形式，故B正确。

40. **B** 考查现在分词作伴随状语。句意：——你女儿在做什么？——她在打电话，和一个校友聊天。由句意可知在打电话的同时，是在聊天，而且she和chat是主动关系，用现在分词作伴随状语，故选B。

41. **C** 考查非谓语动词的逻辑主语以及与状语从句的关系。本句的主语是tears，因此和read之间没有逻辑上的任何关系，故不用非谓语，也不用省略的形式，由此答案C符合语境，即：as引导一个时间状语从句。

42. **C** 考查省略和动名词作主语。句意：——什么让她不高兴？——丢了钱包（让她不高兴）。根据What made her unhappy可知这个句子缺少主语，动名词可以做句子的主语，故选C项。

43. **A** 考查虚拟语气和非谓语的用法。句意：校长坚决要求每一分钟都应被充分利用，以便为期中考试做好准备。insist意为“坚持，坚决要求”接that宾语从句时，从句需使用虚拟语气，即从句谓语使用“should+动词原形”的形式，其中的should可以省略。但是，当insist表示“坚称，坚持认为”时，接that从句不使用虚拟，如：I insist that he is innocent.我坚持认为他是无罪的。（“认为”是事实用陈述句语气。）第二个空to do 表示目的状语，故选A项。

44. **C** 考查-ed分词短语作原因状语的用法。句意：由于陷入了沉思，他差点撞到了前面的车上。be lost in thought是一个短语，意为“陷入沉思”，所以选C。

45. **C** 考查“连词+分词（短语）作状语”。题干的主语是the experiment，谓语动词是shows，that引导宾语从句，宾语从句的主干是proper amounts of exercise can improve our health，而if _____ regularly则是插入的条件句。当条件从句的主语与主句的主语一致时，可省略从句中的主语，使用非谓语动词的形式作条件状语。此题中，由于carry out 的主语与improve 的主语都是exercise，故可以省略if 条件句中的主语，使用carry out 的非谓语动词形式。因carry out 与主语之间是被动关系，故排除B、D；又由于此处没有强调carry out 这个动作的正在进行之意，而是强调一般情况，即“如果（我们）定期地做（适量运动）”，故排除A 选项。因此C 为正确答案。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：本文介绍了一个小学竖起提示栏提醒家长接孩子时不要玩手机，而应专心与孩子进行亲子互动的举措。

46. **to find** 考查动词不定式。此处为“only to do sth.”作结果状语，only与不定式连用，表示出乎意料。

47. **saying** 考查现在分词。此处为现在分词作伴随状语。

48. **to develop** 考查动词不定式。try to do sth.意为“努力做某事，尽力做某事”，暗含不一定成功之意，try doing sth.意为“试着做某事”，根据语境，此处应填不定式。

49. **to get** 考查动词不定式。此处为动词不定式短语作后置定语。

50. **speaking** 考查动名词。此处speaking为动名词短语作主语，与后面的listening并列。

51. **questioned** 考查过去分词。question与some people之间是被动关系。

52. **calling** 考查现在分词。此处为“with+名词+doing”的复合结构。one parent与call之间是主动关系。

53. **to take** 考查动词不定式。中心词被形容词最高级修饰，后面用动词不定式作后置定语。

54. **starting** 考查现在分词。此处现在分词短语作后置定语。a third of children与start之间是主动关系。

55. **trained** 考查过去分词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语。toilet与train之间是被动关系。

Unit 6

I.

1. **is改为should be或be** 考查虚拟语气。suggest 意为“建议”时，之后的从句应用虚拟语气，故is应改为should be，其中，should可以省略。

2. **mustn’t改为can’t** 考查情态动词。表示否定或疑问的猜测，情态动词分别用can和can’t。

3. **去掉must或把must改为should**考查虚拟语气。insist表示“坚决要求”时，其后的宾语从句谓语用虚拟语气，即“should+动词原形”，其中，should可以省略。

4. **should改为must** 考查情态动词。句意：约翰考试的成绩为全班最高，所以昨晚他肯定学习了。此处为情态动词表示肯定推测，must表示“一定，肯定”，符合题意。should have studied表示“本应该学习（而实际上没有学习）”。

5. **mustn’t改为needn’t** 考查情态动词。根据句意不是“不应该”，而是“没必要”。

II.

6. **had not been planned** 考查虚拟语气。句意：如果整个手术不提前安排的话，那就要浪费大量的时间和金钱。此处是表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，if 引导的从句须用过去完成时。

7. **（should）not hold; was** 考查suggest, insist后接宾语从句的用法。句意：汤姆建议我们不开这个会议，但詹妮坚持说这很重要。当suggest表示“建议”，insist表示“坚决要求”，后接宾语从句应用虚拟语气，即“（should）+动词原形”；而当suggest表示“暗示，表明”，insist表示“坚持认为，坚称”时，其后的宾语从句需用陈述语气。

8. **have been cleaned** 考查“情态动词+have done”表示对过去的推测。句意：这个房间一团糟，不可能打扫过。clean与it之间是被动关系，故使用have been cleaned。

9. **can’t have gone** 考查情态动词。句意：乔治不可能走得太远。他

的咖啡仍然是温的。can’t have done是对过去的否定推测。

10. **shall** 考查情态动词。shall用于第二、第三人称，表示说话人给对方命令、警告、允诺或威胁。此处是说，根据学校规定学生在校时都必须要穿校服。

11. **Must** 考查情态动词must的用法。句意：你非要现在打断我吗？你难道没看见我在打电话吗？must表说话者极不耐烦和生气的语气。

12. **must** 根据后一分句判断，前一分句应该表示肯定完成了工作，故用“must+have+过去分词”，意为“想必，准是，一定是”，语气非常肯定。

13. **had told** 考查虚拟语气。句意：约翰独自去了医院。如果他当时告诉我的话，我会跟他一起去。前面独立的句子是陈述语气，交代了整个事件发生在过去。后面主句would have gone说明是与过去事实相反的假设，故if 从句中应使用had done的形式。

14. **would have been saved** 考查虚拟语气。句意：如果我早知道这个电脑程序，就可以节省大量的时间和精力了。根据句子的倒装特征判断此处是省略了if 的虚拟条件句，补上if 并还原题干为正常语序：If I had known about this computer program, a huge amount of time and energy _____. 由此可判断if 引导的从句表示对过去事实的虚拟，故主句应用would have done的形式；又因为time and energy 和save 之间为被动关系，故填would have been saved。

15. **was** 通过虚拟语气考查时态。题中出现的If the traffic hadn’t been so heavy, I could have been back by 6 o’clock.是与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，所以答语应用一般过去时态。

Ⅲ.

16. **B** 考查情态动词。句意：——我要马上通知他日程有变化吗？——恐怕必须这样，以免他开会迟到了。四个选项中，只有B项符合句意。

17. **C** 考查情态动词表推测。句意：玛丽的考试成绩全班第一，她学习一定很刻苦。“must have done”表示对过去发生事情的推测。

18. **D** 考查情态动词表推测。句意：你不可能上星期五在她办公室见到她，她去外地已经两个星期了。情态动词can表示推测，只能用于否定句或疑问句。

19. **A** 考查needn’t have done 的结构。根据后面一句的意思“这类计算我们让计算机来做”可知，前面是讲：“你没必要做全部计算！”，needn’t have done意为“原本不必”，符合题意。

20. **B** 考查suggest的用法。句意：简苍白的脸表明她病了，她的父母建议她去体检。本句中第一个suggest是“表明，显示”的意思，后面的be动词视整句时态而定，为过去式。第二个suggest是“建议”的意思，后面是一个虚拟语气，谓语采用“（should）do sth.”的形式，其中should常省略，故选B。

Ⅳ.

A

语篇解读：汤姆向史密斯老师咨询妈妈抱怨他放学后不按时回家的问题。

21. **can/could** 考查情态动词。这里表示请求帮助。

22. **should** 考查情态动词。句意：但是我知道我应该先回家。should表示“应该”。

23. **can**考查情态动词。“cannot/can never... too+形容词或副词”表示“再……也不为过”。

24. **might** 考查情态动词。might as well do sth. 为固定结构，表示“还是做……为好”。

25. **talked/should talk** 考查虚拟语气。由It is high time sb. did sth.可知填talked或者should talk。

B

语篇解读：文章介绍了有关自己的同桌玛丽在体重方面的困扰。

26. **were** 考查虚拟语气。在as if/as though, even if/even though引导的状语从句或表语从句中，表示与现在事实相反时，从句的谓语动词用一般过去时；与过去事实相反时，从句的谓语动词用过去完成时。

27. **（should）eat** 考查虚拟语气。在advise后面的宾语从句中，谓语动词用“should+动词原形”的虚拟语气形式，其中的should可以省略。

28. **were** 考查虚拟语气。if only表示不能实现或难以实现的愿望或与现在事实相反的假设时，从句的谓语动词用一般过去时；若表示与过

去事实相反的假设，从句的谓语动词用过去完成时。

29. **hadn’t eaten** 考查虚拟语气。在表示愿望的动词wish后的宾语从句中，需用虚拟语气，如表示与现在事实相反，从句的谓语动词用一般过去时；与过去事实相反，则用过去完成时态。

30. **went** 考查虚拟语气。would rather用来表达主观愿望，其后的宾语从句中需用虚拟语气，谓语动词用过去时表示现在或将来。

Unit 7

I.

1. **because改为that** 考查连接代词。此处是句型The reason why... is that... 的搭配。

2. **and后面加that** 考查连接代词。当两个或多个that引导的宾语从句并列使用时，只有第一个从句的引导词that可以省略，后面的that不可省略。

3. **hate后面加it** 考查形式宾语it。句意：我讨厌你在大庭广众之下说那样的事。此处是“动词+it+when/if-从句”，能用于此结构的常见动词有enjoy, hate, love, like, dislike, appreciate, prefer 等。

4. **what改为that或划去all或划去what** 考查从句。若改为in all he had seen at the exhibition，其中all是先行词，后面是省略that的定语从句。

5. **pity后面加that** 考查主语从句。此句中it 作形式主语，she has made such a mistake为真实主语，that引导主语从句，不能省略。

II.

6. **what** 考查宾语从句。句意：很久以前，人们的生活与现在截然不同的时候，人们或许更诚实。what引导介词from的宾语从句，在该从句中what充当is的表语。

7. **whether/if; If** 考查宾语从句和状语从句的连接词。句意：没有人知道明天是否下雨。如果下雨，我们就待在家里。前者whether/if意为“是否”，引导宾语从句；后者if 意为“如果”，引导条件状语从句。

8. **where** 考查表语从句。句意：你说应该人人平等，这是我赞同的地方。系动词is后面的内容应为表语从句，agree表“赞同”时属于不及物动词，I agree本身是完整的主谓结构，因此缺乏状语。表语从句where I agree的意思是“我赞同之处，我赞同的地方”。此处容易误填what。

9. **What; that**考查主语从句和表语从句。句意：让这所学校骄傲的是超过90%的学生都已经被重点大学录取了。第一个下划线处的引导词

引导主语从句并在该主语从句中充当主语，特指令校方骄傲的事情，应填入关系代词型的引导词what；第二个下划线处引导表语从句，表示原因、理由，应填入that，引导对应的名词性从句。

10. ① **As** 考查as引导的非限制性定语从句。as 作know的宾语，指代后面整个句子。②**It** 考查it作形式主语。此处it充当形式主语，指代后面that引导的真实主语。③ **What** 考查主语从句。此处what引导主语从句，在从句中，what作know的宾语。

11. **is reported** 考查主语从句。句意：据报道，3亿多中国人眼睛近视。此处是It is/was reported that... 的主语从句，意为“据报道……”。

12. ① **that/which** 考查定语从句。句意：我知道的消息是汤姆明年将出国。that/which引导定语从句，修饰先行词news，在定语从句中作主语。 ② **that** 考查同位语从句。句意：汤姆将出国的消息是他讲的。that在句中不作任何成分，只是起到引导作用，不能省略。

13. **（should）be built** 考查同位语从句和虚拟语气。句意：在这里修建一座新桥的建议被采纳了。在某些名词后的同位语从句中，其谓语动词应用虚拟语气形式：（should）+动词原形。

14. ① **who** ② **Whoever** 考查定语从句和主语从句。两个句子均意为：谁得分最多，谁就赢得比赛。whoever引导主语从句时，意义相当于anyone who，即表示“任何人……都”，“不管是谁……都……”。

15. **whether** 考查主语从句。句意：它对我们有利还是有害，还得看看再说。此处it为形式主语，真实主语由whether引导。

III.

16. **D** 考查强调句型的特殊疑问句形式。句意：我只是在想是什么让他那么兴奋。wonder后的宾语从句含it is... that... 的强调句型，且强调主语，应该用陈述语序，故选择what it is。

17. **A** 考查宾语从句。句意：手头上有一堆堆的工作，简怀疑她是否能通过即将到来的驾驶证考试。从句中不缺少成分，根据句意可知答案是whether/if。doubt接宾语从句有两种形式：I don’t doubt that...我不怀疑……；I doubt whether/if... 我怀疑……

18. **B** 考查表语从句。句意：雨季最令人愉悦的就是人们可以完全摆脱沙尘的困扰。is后跟表语从句，表语从句不缺少主语、谓语和宾语，因此用that，只起引导作用。

19. **B** 考查同位语从句。句意：经理提出一个建议，我们应当配个助手。因为有太多的工作要做。a suggestion和we should have an assistant之间是同位语关系，由于是陈述句，因此用that引导。

20. **B** 考查宾语从句。whatever引导一个宾语从句，并且作wants的宾语。这里的whatever不能改成what，因为题意想表达的显然是“无论孩子要什么就给他（她）什么是不明智的”，表示泛指的概念。同时要注意，这里whatever也不能改用no matter what，因为后者只能引导状语从句。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：文章报道了一起真相有待调查的交通事故。

21. **that** 考查主语从句。“It be+过去分词+that...”为固定句式，其中it为形式主语，that 从句是真正的主语，此处that不能省略。

22. **who** 考查定语从句。此处先行词为person，后面定语从句中缺少主语。

23. **what** 考查宾语从句。句意：没有人看见当时究竟发生了什么。what引导宾语从句，在该从句中作主语。

24. **What** 考查主语从句。what引导主语从句，作do的宾语。

25. **who** 考查宾语从句。从句中缺少主语且表示“人”，故用who引导。

26. **to judge** 考查非谓语动词。此处前文中it 为形式主语，真实主语为后面动词不定式。

27. **that** 考查表语从句。句意：也许是因为司机疲劳驾驶没能及时刹住车。The reason was that... 为固定句式，意思是“原因是……”。

28. **It** 考查形式主语。此处it 为形式主语，真实主语为that the car driver stopped the car immediately，因此构成了It is/was certain that... 的固定句型。

29. **that** 考查同位语从句。句意：司机不承认他在拐角处超速驾驶。that 引导同位语从句，解释fact 的具体内容，that不能省略。

30. **whether** 考查宾语从句。句意：警察怀疑他所说的话的真实性，决定做进一步的调查。doubted（肯定式）后面的宾语从句常用whether引导。doubt 在否定句或疑问句中时，后面常用that来引导从

句。

Unit 8

I.

1. 去掉**so** 考查连词及状语从句。汉语说“因为……所以……”，但英语却不能用because... so...这样的结构，同样也没有though... but...的结构。

2. **while**改为**when** 考查be doing sth. when.../be about to do sth. ... when... 的结构，表“正在/即将去做……突然；就在那时……”。

3. **possibly**改为**possible** 考查状语从句的省略。句意：如有可能，他在相信某种事物之前总要先看到证据。when, while, if, as if, although/though, as, until, once, whether, unless, where等引导的从句中，如果其谓语为be，而主语与主句的主语相同或从句的主语为it时，可省略主语和be。此句可还原为： If it was possible, he wanted proof before he would believe something.

4. **because**后面加**of** 考查连词because和介词短语because of的区别。because是连词，后面要跟句子；because of是介词，后面跟名词或动名词。

5. **such**改为**so** 考查结果状语从句。在so/such... that...结果状语从句中，当名词被many, much, few, little修饰时，该结构需使用so，不能使用such。

II.

6. **will gain** 考查状语从句的时态。此处是wherever引导的让步状语从句，符合“主将从现”的法则，故主句使用一般将来时态。

7. ① **comparing** ② **compared** 考查“连词+分词”结构。前者的逻辑主语是we，与compare之间是主动关系，故为现在分词。后者的逻辑主语是that the temperature of the earth rose about one degree Fahrenheit during the 20th century，与compare之间是被动关系，故为过去分词。

8. ① **went** ② **going** 考查as和with的区别。两句均意为：随着时间的推进，白天变得越来越长了。前者as为连词，根据主句时态是一般过去

时态，故为went；后者with是介词，不能引导句子，此结构为with的复合结构，time和go 之间是主动关系，故为going。

9. ① **when** ② **that** 考查when引导的时间状语从句和强调句型。前者是It was+（时刻或时间点）+when sth. happened.（当某事发生时，是几点钟或哪一年），为时间状语从句；后者是强调句型。判断方法：去掉it、be和that，余下的部分仍是一个完整的句子，这样的句子一定是强调句。

10. **before** 考查before引导的时间状语从句。句意：过了很久，他们才从监狱里逃脱。It was+一段时间+before sth. happened. 意为“过了一段时间之后，某事才发生了”。 另外，It will be+一段时间+before sth. happens.意为“要过一段时间之后，某事才会发生；不用过多久，某事就将发生”。

III.

11. **A** 考查原因状语从句。句意：我非常喜欢听音乐，因为它能让我放松，使我不去想一天中的其他事情。空格前后是因果关系。

12. **C** 考查状语从句的连词。句意：随着人口平均寿命的增长，有越来越多老人需要照顾。此处as意为“随着”。

13. **C** 考查让步状语从句。句意：尽管网上购物已经改变了我们的生活，但不是它所有的影响都是积极的。根据语境可知前后为让步关系。

14. **D** 考查程度副词however引导状语从句的用法。however（=to whatever degree不管到什么程度）引导的状语从句中however所强调的形容词或副词应紧随其后。如：However hungry Jane is, she goes on working.

15. **C** 考查条件状语从句。前面一个分句为条件状语从句，后面一个分句为主语，需由if引导。check的逻辑主语不是句子主语some spelling mistakes，故不选A和D。若选B，需由and引导并列分句。

16. **C** 考查时间状语从句。所填词引导时间状语从句，构成It（will）be+时间段+状语从句，意为“过多久才将……”，故选C。

17. **C** 考查让步状语从句。句意：无论你在这次考试中取得什么成绩，你都不应当失去信心。根据句子结构判断，此句为状语从句，故排除B和D。no matter how引导让步状语从句时，后面跟形容词或者副词，

故排除A。此处no matter what 相当于whatever。

18. **A** 考查省略形式的状语从句。句意：当和整个宇宙比较时，我们能观察到的最大恒星似乎根本也没那么大。分析句子结构可知，逗号之后是主句，主句主语star与所给动词compare构成逻辑上的被动关系，因此应该用过去分词，排除B、C和D项。句中When compared是一个省略结构，完整结构为When the biggest star is compared with the size of the whole universe，在句中作时间状语，因此A项符合语境，故选A。

19. **C** 考查从属连词辨析。句意：不管这个任务多么艰难，我们都决定按时完成任务。根据句意，本句中含有让步状语从句，as表示“虽然”时，不位于句首，应该是Difficult as the task is；whenever意为“无论何时”，不符合句意；how 位于句首时，没有让步的含义；however意为“无论……”，可引导让步状语从句，故本题选C。

20. **D** 考查状语从句和状语的转换。句意：当我在街上走的时候，发生了一起严重的车祸，导致三人死亡。这句话已经有了主谓结构：主语为a terrible car accident，谓语为happened，所以只能加状语，而walk的逻辑主语不可能是car accident，状语中要有自己的逻辑主语，所以选择D项。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：作者描述了自己尊敬的英语老师帮助他学习英语的往事。

21. **because/for** 考查因果逻辑关系。根据句意，空格前后为因果关系。

22. **until** 考查时间状语从句。此处为not... until...的结构，意为“直到……才……”。

23. **teaching** 考查非谓语动词。teach的逻辑主语为I，两者为主动关系。

24. **time** 考查时间状语从句。此处是every time 引导的时间状语从句。

25. **as/though** 考查让步状语从句。as/though作“虽然，尽管”解时，引导让步状语从句，常用倒装语序，把从句中的表语、状语或动词原形放在as之前，即“adj./adv./n.+as+主语+谓语+主句”。

26. **Although/Though/While** 考查让步状语从句。根据前后句逻辑关系可判断。

27. **so** 考查结果状语从句。此处是so... that...（如此……以致……）的搭配。

28. **However** 考查让步状语从句。此处however 相当于no matter how。

29. **what** 考查让步状语从句。此处what 作did的宾语。

30. **whenever/when**考查时间状语从句。句意：每当看到有人需要帮助，他都不遗余力。

Unit 9

I.

1. **who改为whom** 考查关系代词。关系代词who不可以放在介词后面。

2. **在gave前加that或把gave改为giving** 考查定语从句或非谓语动词。注意关系代词作主语不能省略，因句中已有who，为避免歧义，本句不能使用who。若改为giving，则为现在分词短语作后置定语。

3. **删除what或者把what改为that** 考查定语从句。all为不定代词，充当先行词时需用that引导定语从句，此处that在定语从句中充当do的宾语，可以省略。what不是关系词，不可以引导定语从句。当然，本句还可以把all删除，将what的首字母大写（此时what引导主语从句），但是这涉及两处改动。

4. **is改为am** 考查定语从句中的主谓一致。应根据先行词I确定谓语动词的形式。

5. **that改为which或as** 考查定语从句。which和as引导定语从句时，可以代替整个句子。注意：位于句首时只能用as，即As made us disappointed, the girl failed in the exam.

6. **which改为it或者把and删除，或者把and改为逗号**考查句子结构。若改which，整句为and连接的并列句，若改and，which引导的是定语从句。

7. **that改为which** 考查“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句。定语从句中如果介词提前，介词后只能跟which/whom。

8. **which改为that** 考查关系代词。当先行词被only修饰时，定语从句只能用that引导。

9. **which改为that，或在which前加in，或去掉which** 考查关系代词。先行词为way（方式，方法）时，定语从句可以用that/in which引导，也可以省略。

10. **which改为where** 考查定语从句和状语从句的区别。句意：别把药瓶放在孩子可以够到的地方。这是地点状语从句（由where引导），而不是定语从句，因为没有先行词。

II.

11. **whose** 考查定语从句的关系词。句意：我的隔壁住着一对夫妇，他们的孩子经常很吵。 a couple是先行词，这对夫妻的孩子很吵，children和couple是所属关系，故用whose作定语，相当于the children of whom。

12. **when** 考查定语从句。句意：我们将把公园野餐推迟到下个星期，那时天气可能会更好。定语从句的先行词是next week，定语从句中不缺少主宾表，缺少时间状语，故为when。

13. **which** 考查非限制性定语从句。句意：关于人类为什么哭的时候会流泪，科学家已经提出了很多理论，没有一个被证明了。先行词是theories，指物，定语从句中用which引导。

14. ① **knows** 考查定语从句中的主谓一致。句意：他是我们学校中唯一懂法语的教师。因为one前有the only之类限定词，定语从句在意义上修饰的是the only one，是单数，而不是复数名词the teachers。② **are** 考查定语从句中的主谓一致。句意：这是目前空着的房间之一。因为one前没有the only之类的限定词，定语从句在意义上修饰的是名词复数the rooms，而不是单数one。

15. **on** 考查“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句。当先行词表示时间，定语从句中缺少时间状语时，通常用关系副词when引导，此时也可选用表示时间的“介词+which”来代替关系副词when。

16. **which/that** 考查定语从句。句意：地震是地球表面突然的震动，地震会造成重大的损失。定语从句中缺乏主语，故为which/that。

17. ① **As** 考查as引导的非限制性定语从句。句意：众所周知，中国拥有世界上最多的人口。

② **which** 考查which引导的非限制性定语从句。句意：他没获得冠军，这一点是我没预料到的。表示“正如”的含义时，通常用as引导非限制性定语从句，也可用which引导；但置于句首时，只能用as引导。当非限制性定语从句是否定含义时，只能用which，而不用as引导。

18. **which** 考查which引导的定语从句。句意：彼得要娶爱丽斯这件事还没宣布却已传得沸沸扬扬。引导非限制性定语从句的which可以指代前面的先行词，也可以指前面整个句子的含义。句子中的which指“彼得要娶爱丽斯”这整个句子的意思。

19. ① **was given** ② **given** 前者考查定语从句中的时态和语态；后者

考查过去分词短语作后置定语。

20. ① **their** ② **whose** 考查独立主格及非限制性定语从句。前者their parents seated together joking 不是非限制性定语从句，而是一个独立主格结构，空格后的动词seated 不是谓语，而是一个过去分词，因为seat作动词用时，是及物动词。后者whose parents were seated together joking为非限制性定语从句，因为其后有完整的谓语were seated。

III.

21. **D** 考查代词及定语从句。one作date的同位语，后面跟that引导的定语从句，I think是插入语。

22. **A** 考查独立主格。句意：这个工厂生产很多名牌汽车，其中没有一辆运往国外。ship在这里是一个及物动词，意思是“运送……到”；shipped是过去分词，此处是“代词+过去分词短语”构成的独立主格结构。如果在shipped前面加was，则应该选B项，构成非限制性定语从句。

23. **B** 考查定语从句。句意：这不是我表兄曾经答应给我买的那样好的礼物。先行词前面有such修饰，因此选择as，引导定语从句。

24. ① **D** ② **A** ③ **C** 句意：最后离开这个房间的人应该关上灯。① 考查主语从句，whoever 引导主语从句；② 考查定语从句，anyone为先行词，后面who引导定语从句，anyone who... 相当于whoever；③ 考查定语从句，those既为整个句子的主语，也是定语从句的先行词，后面为who引导的定语从句。

25. **A** 考查定语从句。第一空先行词为way，前面有the only 修饰，故关系代词用that，由于在定语从句中作宾语，也可以省略。第二空中的way意为“方式”，当way表示“方式，方法”且在句中作先行词时，引导定语从句可用that，也可用in which，也可以省略。

26. ① **B** ② **D**考查定语从句。句①陈述语序为This museum is _____ they visited last month. 句子中缺乏表语，因此选the one作表语，同时为先行词，在后面定语从句they visited last month 作宾语，故关系代词可以省略；句②中that后面为宾语从句，宾语从句中缺乏主语，主干应该为the one is to be praised，而the one作主语，同时为先行词，在后面定语从句cleans the blackboard中作主语，故指代它的关系代词who不可以省略。

27. ① **C** ② **B** 前者考查时间状语从句，句中when引导时间状语从句；后者考查强调句型。

28. **D** 考查定语从句和省略。这道题很多考生误选A，因为强调句型的经典结构“it is+被强调的部分+that+从句”。此题中，“that+从句”已被省略，正确答案为where。句中where we worked是定语从句，修饰the farm。该强调句补充完整应为：It was on the farm where we worked that I got to know her.

29. **D** 考查定语从句。本句中，who引导一个嵌入式定语从句：who scored the winning points for the basketball team，先行词为the boy，而I think相当于插入语，由于关系词指人，又在从句中起主语作用，故应选用who。

30. **B** 考查定语从句。第一个定语从句缺时间状语，因此第一空应该使用关系副词when；第二个定语从句缺主语，关系代词指代前面整句话，因此用which引导非限制性定语从句。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：本文主要介绍了大猩猩之类的野生灵长类动物濒临灭绝的状况。

31. **who/that** 考查限制性定语从句。先行词为scientists，定语从句缺少主语，故填who或that。

32. **when** 考查限制性定语从句。先行词为a time，定语从句中缺少时间状语。

33. **that/which** 考查限制性定语从句。先行词为the group of mammals，定语从句缺少主语，故填that或which。

34. **whose** 考查限制性定语从句。先行词为mouse lemur，定语从句中缺少定语，故填whose。

35. **which**考查非限制性定语从句。先行词为the gorilla，定语从句中缺少主语，故填which。

36. **where** 考查限制性定语从句。先行词为the places，定语从句中缺少地点状语，故填where，相当于in which。

37. **where** 考查非限制性定语从句。先行词为their areas，定语从句中缺少地点状语，故填where，相当于in which。

38. **which**考查非限制性定语从句。先行词为primate species，定语从句中缺少主语，故填which。

39. **who**考查限制性定语从句。先行词为those of us，定语从句中缺少主语，故填who。

40. **As** 考查非限制性定语从句。as 引导非限制性定语从句，可放在主句之前或者主句之后，which 引导的非限制性定语从句只能放在主句之后。另外，as 有“正如……，正像……”的意思。

Unit 10

I.

1. **are改为is** 考查There be句型的主谓一致。there be句型中的主谓一致遵循“就近原则”，即由距离它最近的那个名词的数来决定。

2. **How改为What** 考查感叹句型。此处为“What+adj.+复数名词+主语+谓语！”的感叹句型。

3. **when 改为that** 考查强调句型。被强调成分为at Christmas，其中的动词be采用了may have been这一较为复杂的形式。

4. **didn’t改为did** 考查倒装。not until位于句首，主句要部分倒装，not已经放在句首，所以主句中助动词应采用肯定形式。

5. **was改为were** 考查倒装及主谓一致。句首是nearby，主语是名词，因此要完全倒装。主语是two canoes，故为were。

II.

6. **is** 考查时态。由首句一般现在时可判断空格所在句为一般现在时或者一般将来时。There be句型中，如果主语是复数名词，且表示一笔金额或一个总数或表达一个单个概念时，则be仍用单数形式。

7. **Don’t tell** 考查祈使句的否定形式。这是含有条件状语从句的祈使句。句意：如果他明天来，千万别告诉他这个坏消息。

8. **has been** 考查强调句型中的主谓一致。此句为强调句型，强调主语Mr. Robbins，accompanied by his wife and children作Mr. Robbin的后置定语。被强调成分是主语，who/that之后的谓语动词应该在人称和数上与原句中的主语保持一致，故应增入has been。

9. **handed**考查省略。句意：这个男孩在马路上拾起一枚硬币并把他交给了警察。并列句中后边的分句可以省略与前边分句中相同的成分。本句可以看成and后面省略了the boy。

10. **with** 考查替代和介词。前面既有肯定又有否定或两个谓语时用so it is/was with sb.（也可以用so it is the same with sb.）。

III.

11. **A** 考查主谓一致。句意：像莎士比亚这样的诗人拥有广泛的读者，然而，他的一些作品中有些很难读懂。主语为poets，因此第一空应填入are；定语从句中主语some指代works（这里指众多作品），为复数含义，故谓语动词用复数形式。

12. **D** 考查主谓一致。句意：据报道，目前该地区许多新房屋正在修建之中。主语many a new house尽管为复数概念，但是为单数形式，应遵循语法一致原则，故谓语动词用单数形式。

13. **D** 考查主谓一致。句意：老师及学生正在讨论美国新出版的《阅读技巧》这本书。句子主语为the teacher，而together with the students只是修饰性成分，故谓语动词应使用单数形式。

14. **A** 考查主谓一致。句意：詹姆斯教授将上一堂关于西方文化的讲座，但是具体时间和地点尚未确定。but分句中，句子主语为when and where，实际上是主语从句when and where it will be given的缩写，故谓语应当用单数形式。

15. **B** 考查主谓一致。句意：要么是你，要么是你的一名学生要去参加明天即将召开的会议。either… or…引导并列主语，谓语需遵循临近原则，one of your students为单数含义，故谓语动词应为单数形式。

16. **C** 考查非谓语动词及状语从句的省略。状语从句连词once之后的非谓语动词与主句主语anyone之间为被动关系，故选过去分词。

17. **B** 考查特殊强调句。句意：早在克里斯托弗·哥伦布穿越大西洋的80多年前，郑和就航行到了非洲东海岸。去掉“It was... that...”，本句依然成立，故此句为强调句，需填入that，被强调部分为时间状语80 years before Christopher Columbus crossed the Atlantic。

18. **B**考查祈使句的反意疑问句。解题关键是判断说话人的语气，能够判断出第一句是祈使句，祈使句的反意疑问部分应为will you或won’t you，故本题选B。

19. **A** 考查祈使句。句意：在你辞职之前，请好好考虑你家人对于你的决定的感受。此题容易让考生选成B。此处不选现在分词，因为根据句意的情景，consider不表目的、伴随、原因……，而就是一个祈使句，表示一种规劝、建议的语气。

20. **B** 考查感叹句。句意：多么奇怪的动物啊！我以前从没见过。此处为“What+a/an+adj.+n.+it is/was”的省略结构，故B项正确。

21. **A** 考查强调句型中的时态和there be句型谓语数的问题。由ten minutes ago可知应该用过去时，there be句型中谓语动词使用就近原则，因此，答案选择A项。

22. **D** 考查倒装句。here, there, thus, then等副词位于句首，且当句子的主语是名词时，句子用全部倒装句，故选D。

23. **C** 考查强调句型特殊形式。句意：直到晚上，他的丈夫才到家。not... until...引导的状语从句在强调句型中，not应与until在一起。注意与下列句子的辨析：Her husband didn't arrive home until in the evening. Not until in the evening did her husband arrive home.

24. **A** 考查非谓语动词及状语从句的省略。状语从句连词if之后省去了主语，而主句为祈使句，默认主语为you，主语you与动词ask之间为被动关系，故使用过去分词。

25. **D** 考查强调句型。句意：你在一个错误的地方等待。大客车是在旅店接送游客的。强调句结构是：It is/was+被强调部分+that+其余部分，如果被强调部分是人，也可以用who，这句话强调的是地点状语at the hotel，故选that。

Ⅳ.

语篇解读：文章作者介绍了自己的运动观念和对爬山活动的钟爱。

26. **so** 考查部分倒装句。"so+情态动词/助动词/be动词+主语"句型为倒装结构，意思为"……也是如此"。

27. **Only** 考查部分倒装。"Only+状语"位于句首，主句要部分倒装。

28. **will be** 考查时态。此处为"祈使句+and/or+一般将来时态的陈述句"结构。

29. **lies** 考查完全倒装。地点状语（多为介词短语）置于句首加以强调时，其后通常用完全倒装语序。

30. **that** 考查倒装结构的结果状语从句。此处为so... that... 的结构运用于倒装句型。

31. **are** 考查There be句型的主谓一致。There be句型的主谓一致要遵循就近原则，interesting hikes为复数，故用are。

32. **dangerous** 考查感叹句。此处是how引导的感叹句作宾语从句。

33. **as/though** 考查让步状语从句。在倒装句中只能用as或though引导，在陈述句语序中只能用although/thought引导，不可用as。

34. **that** 考查强调句型。此处强调only引导的状语。

35. **reaching** 考查省略结构。此处为when引导的时间状语从句，其逻辑主语为主句主语we，与reach之间是主动关系，故为reaching。

Part 2 强化集训

强化集训 1

I.

1. **a** 考查冠词。句意：我们举办了一个派对，所有人都来参加了。我认为这是一次成功的派对。此处是抽象名词的具体化。

2. **receiving** 考查非谓语动词。句意：谢谢您的配合并盼望早日接到贵方订单。look forward to 意为“期盼”，to为介词，后面接动词用-ing形式。

3. **Tired** 考查形容词作状语。句意：又累又饿，他很快睡熟了。该状语的逻辑主语是he，此处为“感到劳累的”，应该使用形容词tired。

4. **wishes** 考查时态。句意：英国的每一个乡镇都有公共图书馆，在那里只要愿意任何人都可以借书。主句为现在时态，此处为if引导的条件状语从句，需用一般现在时态表示将来。

5. **Riding/To ride; to ride** 句意：骑自行车是一个很好的解决办法。因此，我们每个人用骑自行车取代开车去上班是具有重大意义的。前者是非谓语动词作主语；后者是动词不定式作真实主语，it为形式主语的结构，即It’s of great significance for sb. to do sth.。

6. **if/whether** 考查宾语从句。句意：下周我去度假，不知你是否方便替我照看我的小狗。此句是if或者whether引导的宾语从句。

7. **should do/did** 考查虚拟语气。句意：在其变得更糟之前，是我们采取措施的时候了。It is（high）time that...后面的从句谓语动词要用过去式或用should加动词原形，来表达虚拟语气，其中should不可省略。

8. **eating** 考查非谓语动词。句意：吃鱼时，你应当注意确保自己不被鱼刺卡到。此处是when引导的时间状语从句，eat的逻辑主语为you，两者之间是主动关系，故为eating。

9. **which** 考查定语从句。句意：当今，许多学生沉溺于网络，这造

成他们在校表现不佳。此处为非限制性定语从句，which指代前面整个句子。

10. **are** 考查强调句型中的主谓一致。句意：现在站在柜台后面的是玛丽和詹姆斯。强调主语Mary and James，后面谓语动词用复数。

II.

1. **B** 考查冠词的用法。go to the cinema是固定搭配，意为“看电影”；for a while也是固定搭配，表示“一会儿”。

2. **C** 考查连接代词。句意：请找负责国际销售的人接一下电话好吗？这里的whoever相当于anybody that，它既是主句的宾语，也是宾语从句的引导词。

3. **B** 考查时态和语态。hear of表示“听说”，后面应该有宾语，故此处应为被动语态，排除C和D。前句意思是“他妹妹1998年离开的家”，说明1998年前有音信，由此可判断下句意思是“她妹妹从1998年到现在以来一直没有音信”，因此是现在完成时态，故选B。

4. **C** 考查定语从句。句意：她带来了三个朋友，我以前一个也没有遇见过。本定语从句的先行词是her three friends，后面是由“none of+关系代词”结构引导的定语从句，关系代词指代人（friends）且充当of的宾语，故需用whom。

5. **A** 考查时态。句意：爱德华，你弹得太好了。可我都不知道你会弹钢琴。说明“我”以前不知道“你”会弹钢琴，现在已经知道了，那么“不知道”其实是“过去”不知道，故使用一般过去时态。

6. **B** 考查部分倒装。句意：将计算机应用于教学。结果，不仅教师能节约精力，而且学生也对课程更感兴趣。在not only... but also...结构中，not only放在句首时，not only部分倒装，but also部分不倒装。

7. **D** 考查动词辨析。句意：鼓励你的孩子尝试新东西，但不要太逼迫他们。draw意为“拖，拉；招致；画”；strike 意为“罢（工、课等）；撞；攻击，打击”；rush意为“催促；猛攻；奔腾”；push意为“对……施加压力，逼迫；推动”。故选D。

8. **C** 考查代词。句意：他们不得不考虑的最重要的问题之一就是公众健康问题。分析句子结构可看出they had to consider是定语从句，可见was是主句谓语部分的系动词，根据选项可判断后面不是句子，不需要疑问词，排除A和D。通过对句子结构的分析，空格应指代上文中

question这个名词，而that指代上文，this指代下文，故本题选C。

9. **A** 考查介词。句意：听到她的感人故事之后，他们感动得无法用语言来形容。beyond words表示“在言语之外”，即不能用言语来形容。

10. **C** 考查“with+宾语+宾语补足语”的用法。句意：既然我们已经讨论过这个问题了，人们对我们所采取的决定感到满意吗？在本题中要分析出take 与the decisions之间存在的关系是动宾关系，故用过去分词表示被动。

III.

A

语篇解读：文章属于说明文，介绍了丝绸之路的相关情况。

1. **it** 考查代词。it 指代前文The Silk Road。

2. **that** 考查定语从句。此处为限制性定语从句，先行词前有only 修饰，故填入that。

3. **was traded** 考查时态和语态。句子主语为anything，谓语需用单数，其与trade之间为被动关系，又根据前后文判断此处为一般过去时态，故填was traded。句中that had buyers是定语从句，修饰先行词anything。

4. **before** 考查时间状语从句。句意：货物到达最终目的地之前要转手多次。

5. **on** 考查介词。have an influence on 意为“对……有影响”。

6. **to collect** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式表示目的。

7. **travelers** 考查构词法和名词复数。

8. **detailed** 考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词作前置定语。

9. **regularly** 考查副词。此处为副词修饰动词meet。

10. **continues** 考查时态。根据本段首句Today判断为一般现在时态。句子主语为Trade，是不可数名词，故谓语动词continue需使用第三人称单数形式。

B

语篇解读：文章属于说明文，介绍了加拿大在世界上排名靠前的大

学。

1. **best** 考查形容词最高级。根据首句和空格前的冠词the可判断此处应用good的最高级形式best。

2. **but** 考查连词。根据前后文语境可知前后句为转折关系。

3. **education** 考查构词法。根据空前a world-class判断应填入名词。

4. **Compared** 考查非谓语动词。compare与逻辑主语Canada之间是被动关系。

5. **for** 考查介词。此处为provide sth. for sb.的搭配。provide意为“供给，提供”，可用于provide sb.（with sth.）或provide sth.（for sb.）的结构。

6. **which** 考查定语从句。此处为非限制性定语从句，which指代前面整个情况。

7. **is ranked** 考查时态和语态。the University of British Columbia与rank之间是被动关系，根据后文时态可知此句应为一般现在时。

8. **its** 考查代词。the University of British Columbia与student population之间是所属关系，故应填入形容词性物主代词。

9. **questioned** 考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语，question与中心词students 之间是被动关系。

10. **a** 考查冠词。此处表示泛指，应填入不定冠词a。

强化集训 2

Ⅰ.

1. **itself** 考查反身代词。句意：不但地球的位置在变化，而且地球本身也正经历着变化。

2. **in; to** 考查介词。句意：上海位于中国的东部，日本位于中国的东面。in表示A地在B地范围之内；to表示A地在B地范围之外。

3. **puzzled** 考查形容词作定语。句意：她转过身来，看见了母亲脸上迷惑的表情。-ed形容词表示人的情感，一般修饰人以及人的表情（expression, look, face, appearance）或声音（voice）。

4. **boils** 考查时态。句意：老师告诉我们水在100摄氏度时会沸腾。“水在100摄氏度时会沸腾”是一个科学事实，故从句仍用一般现在时态。

5. **faced** 考查过去分词。句意：正如谚语所说，失败是成功之母。面对失败，我们需要做的是保持冷静，反思学习方法。此处逻辑主语为we，与face 构成（be）faced with 的结构。

6. **had thought** 考查虚拟语气。句意：如果我认为你是认真的，我就不会笑了。shouldn’t have done意为“过去本不应该……（有时含有责怪之意）”。主句与过去事实相反，因此后面应用过去完成时态。

7. **that** 考查名词性从句。句意：无疑，成绩提高了，而且对上学也感兴趣了。此处是that引导的同位语从句，构成There is no doubt that...句型，意为“毫无疑问，……”。

8. **passes** 考查时态。句意：随着时间的流逝，最美丽的脸庞也会变老，变得不可爱，但是其经验和内在性格会永远保持。这是as 引导的时间状语从句，主句使用了一般将来时态，从句用一般现在时态。

9. **whose**考查定语从句。句意：刘老师要跟那些没交家庭作业的学生谈话。whose为who的所有格，作“某（些）人的……”解，它所指代的先行词必须是人，其引导的定语从句修饰它的先行词，同时它本身在从句中作定语。

10. **what** 考查感叹句。句意：你无法想象你妈妈小时候有多苦。what引导感叹句，此处结构为：what+a/an+形容词+可数名词。

II.

1. **A** 考查固定句型。句意：人们常说，人类天生就有说话的能力。It’s said that...为固定句式，意为“据说……”，故正确答案为A。

2. **D** 考查不定代词。根据句子提供的信息alone，可知没有人照顾他，故选择no one。

3. **C** 考查时态。so far常常用于现在完成时态。现在完成时可表示过去发生，一直持续到现在，并仍可能持续下去。

4. **A** 考查比较级和最高级。根据句子意思可以看出，孩子非常喜欢白天的旅行，他们最喜欢的就是骑马了。从句子中可以看出白天的旅行中经历了很多事情，骑马只是其中之一，所以选用最高级most。

5. **D** 考查状语引导词（unless）。句意：这份菜单上的所有菜，除非另外说明，够两到三个人食用。as意为“作为”，if意为“如果”，though意为“尽管”，unless意为“除非”，根据题意，应选D。

6. **C** 考查不定代词的用法。根据句意可知，CD在促销，应该是买一赠一。因此，选C项。

7. **A** 考查固定短语as a result of，意为“由于……的结果”。句意：由于购物太多，詹妮差点错过航班。on top of意为“在……顶端”，in front of意为“在……前面”，in need of 意为“需要”，均不符合句意。

8. **D** 考查非谓语动词辨析。句意：他们用电脑让交通一直流动顺畅。keep sb./sth. doing sth.表示“让……一直做……”，符合句意，故D为答案。

9. **A** 考查非限制性定语从句。句意：我的朋友带领我参观了整个城市，他真是太好了。本题是一个非限制性定语从句，which指代前面一句话的内容，在从句中作主语。that不能引导非限制性定语从句；where在句中只能作状语；it不能引导定语从句。故A为答案。

10. **B** 考查much too与too much的区别。much too意为“太，非常”，修饰形容词，如：The book is much too thick.而too much 意为“很多”，修饰名词或充当名词来用。如：What he said is too much for me. There is too much water in the basin.

III.

A

语篇解读：文章介绍了中国的京杭大运河，涉及其被列入世界遗产、历史形成与作用、社会意义等方面的内容。

1. **was added** 考查时态和语态。根据on June 22, 2014可知此处为一般过去时态。China’s Grand Canal和add之间是被动关系。

2. **provinces** 考查名词的复数。由前面的数词six可知此处需用复数形式。

3. **length** 考查名词形式。根据空前不定冠词a判断，此处应填入名词。

4. **in** 考查介词。此处是in use的搭配。

5. **and** 考查连词。此处为并列关系，需使用表述并列关系的连词

and。

6. **to transport** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作后置定语。

7. **Constructed**考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作状语，construct与it之间是被动关系。

8. **cultural** 考查形容词。此处是形容词修饰名词。

9. **has been** 考查时态。根据Ever since the Yuan dynasty 800 years ago可知，此处应使用现在完成时态。

10. **a** 考查冠词。play a major role in（在……方面发挥作用）为固定搭配。

B

语篇解读：澳大利亚目前成为移民首选。

1. **who** 考查定语从句。先行词为8,000 millionaires，定语从句中缺乏主语，故为who。

2. **traditionally** 考查副词。此处为副词作状语，修饰动词attracted。

3. **country's** 考查名词所有格。country和highly rated health care system之间是所有关系。

4. **those**考查代词。指代前文中the sunny Australian lifestyle和highly rated health care system，且有后置定语in the US and UK。

5. **is considered** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文判断为一般现在时态。it与consider之间为被动关系。

6. **a** 考查冠词。此处为泛指。

7. **welcoming** 考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词短语作伴随状语。welcome与The US之间是主动关系。

8. **coming**考查非谓语动词。此处为see sb. doing sth.的结构。

9. **is suffering** 考查时态。根据now判断为现在进行时态。

10. **since** 考查介词。根据前文the country has experienced...的现在完成时态判断，此处应为since。

强化集训 3

Ⅰ.

1. **places; city’s** 考查名词的复数和所有格。句意：这座城市有许多名胜古迹。我们参观了一些城市旅游景点。前者根据空格前many判断，后者根据句意可知为所属关系。

2. **but** 考查连词。句意：太对不起了，可我今天不能见你。but 用在道歉的表达之后，引出具体话题。

3. **confused; healthy** 考查形容词。句意：一项调查表明，人们对该吃什么才能保持健康这个问题感到困惑。前者为be confused about意为“对……困惑”；后者stay healthy意为“保持健康”。

4. **is designed** 考查时态和语态。句意：《新大学英语》的第一部分是专门为口语练习设计的，以图片和话题为基础。根据后文判断为一般现在时态。The first section of New College English为单数，与design 之间为被动关系。

5. **used** 考查过去分词。句意：如果使用不当，核能会对人的健康和安全造成危害。此处是“连词+分词”的结构，use的逻辑主语为nuclear power，两者之间是被动关系。此题也可以看成是状语从句的省略。

6. **must** 考查情态动词。句意：——妈妈，为什么不穿你的慢跑短裤呢？——哦，如果你非要知道的话，是因为我的腿太瘦了。根据语境可知，此处must意为“非要，偏要”。

7. **Whether**考查名词性从句。句意：成败尚难预料。此处是whether引导的主语从句。

8. **Unless**考查状语从句。句意：除非这些问题得到解决，否则该地区会一直是个火药桶。此处是条件状语从句，unless意为“除非，如果不”。

9. **of** 考查定语从句。句意：我住在一间窗户朝南开的屋子里。此处the window of which=whose window。由于whose具有兼作who和which的所有格的双重功能，故在指人时可用of whom代替whose，指物时可用of which代替whose。

10. **Follow** 考查祈使句。句意：要听从医生的建议，否则，你的咳嗽会加重的。此处是“祈使句+and/then/or+陈述句”结构。

Ⅱ.

1. **B** 考查状语从句的用法。句意：只要你事后把房子打扫干净，你就可以按照你喜欢的方式使用这间房子。as long as=so long as只要。

2. **A** 考查时态。句意：科学家们有很多关于宇宙是如何形成的理论。宇宙的形成是过去发生的事情，故使用一般过去时。

3. **A** 考查非谓语动词作定语。由于名词fresh fruit与动词grow之间为被动关系，所以首先可排除选项D，而B和C虽然可以表示被动，但与句意不吻合，因为being grown表示一个正在进行的被动动作，to be grown表示一个尚未发生的被动动作，均不合题意。这里过去分词短语grown on his own farm作fresh fruit的后置定语，故选A。

4. **D** 考查情态动词的用法。对于英国人，你能谈的为数不多的一点是他们对天气谈论很多。用can表示“可以，能够”，所以正确答案为D。不能选C，should是表示责任和义务的。

5. **A** 考查定语从句。定语从句主谓宾完整，说明应该填关系副词，先行词为a job，定语从句的意思是在这份工作中……，所以答案用where引导的定语从句。

6. **B** 考查时态和语态。the guests 与treat之间是被动的关系，并且动作已经发生，所以用一般过去时的被动形式。

7. **D** 考查非谓语动词的用法。通过句意可知要用不定式作状语表示原因——为了更好地展示信息，所以答案为D。

8. **C** 考查介词的用法。句意：该地区的酿酒业以特殊的方式发展，几乎没有外资参与。with表示“有”，相当于having。with little foreign ownership 即“几乎没有外资参与”，故选C。by意为“通过，借由”，of意为“……的”，from意为“来自”，都不符合句意，故答案为C。

9. **C** 考查动词时态。by the time 后的从句中多用一般现在时和一般过去时，主句相应地使用现在完成时和过去完成时。

10. **B** 考查非谓语动词作状语。非谓语动词的逻辑主语应和句子主语the postman一致，the postman应该是被咬，所以答案为B。

III.

A

语篇解读：文章属于说明文，介绍了中国的传统节日——春节。

1. **called** 考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语，相当

于一个定语从句。

2. **festivals** 考查名词复数。此处为“one of+复数名词”的结构。

3. **which** 考查定语从句。此处为which引导的非限制性定语从句。

4. **to** 考查介词。此处为from... to...的搭配。

5. **is** 考查时态。由于是巅峰时刻，故用单数形式。

6. **Preparing** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动名词作主语。

7. **especially** 考查副词。此处句子缺少状语，故使用形容词especial的副词形式。

8. **are forbidden** 考查时态和语态。此处主语是Many bad words，与forbid之间是被动关系。此处表述内容为一般常识，故用一般现在时态。

9. **to celebrate** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作定语。

10. **if** 考查连词。前后逻辑关系为条件关系，故使用if引导条件状语从句。

B

语篇解读：文章介绍美国为保护重要文化与自然资源而创建国家公园的一些情况。

1. **established** 考查时态。根据后文in 1916可知此处应为一般过去时态。

2. **who/that** 考查强调句型。强调主语an earlier leader。

3. **to protect** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作目的状语。

4. **creation** 考查名词。根据空前the判断，此处应填入名词。

5. **bigger** 考查形容词比较级。根据后文中than Theodore Roosevelt可知，此处应填入bigger。

6. **parks** 考查名词复数。 根据空前five new national可知，此处应填入复数parks。

7. **as** 考查介词。此处是be/become known as 的搭配。

8. **the** 考查冠词。此处表达“19世纪80年代”。

9. **named** 考查非谓语动词。此处是过去分词短语作后置定语。

10. **where** 考查定语从句。此处先行词为ranches，定语从句中缺少

状语。

强化集训 4

I.

1. **children** 考查名词复数。句意：只有大约五分之一的书是为七到十岁的儿童写的。

2. **between** 考查介词。句意：——这是机密。——嗯，我懂。我会把这个秘密保留在你我之间（只有你我知道）。表示两者之间的介词为between。

3. **more beneficial** 考查形容词比较级。句意：每天散步半小时会比一周剧烈运动一次对身体更有益。根据后文than one strenuous exercise a week判断。

4. **will be having**考查将来进行时态。句意：五点至六点之间不要给我打电话，那时我们在吃饭。将来进行时表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作。

5. **to be done** 考查动词不定式的被动式。句意：会谈卓有成效，但还有很多事情要解决。 主语much与do之间是被动关系。remain to be done 意为“尚待被做”。

6. **be allowed** 考查含有情态动词的被动语态。句意：孩子们应当被允许星期五晚上和朋友们一起去看电影。the children与allow之间是被动关系。

7. **whoever; why** 考查名词性从句。句意：我经常在飞机上与邻座的人交谈。这是为什么在马里兰和俄亥俄州的航班上我会结识这么多朋友。前者whoever引导的宾语从句作介词to 的宾语；后者是why引导的表语从句。

8. **Though/Although/While** 考查状语从句。句意：虽然他们都住在附近，但我真的很快与他们失去了联系。根据前后句意判断为让步状语从句。

9. **which** 考查定语从句。句意：这位科学家又有了一个发现，我认为很重要。句中I believe为插入语。 在定语从句中利用插入语可增加难度，这类插入语主要是I think（suppose, expect, believe, imagine）, in my

opinion, to tell you the truth等。做这类题目时，最好先不考虑插入语或状语，这样句子的主干部分就一目了然了。

10. **Hardly** 考查hardly... when... 的搭配。 句意： 我刚进屋就下雨了。根据had I come into部分倒装可知。在hardly... when...结构中hardly引导的部分提至句首，需使用部分倒装。

II.

1. **A** 考查时态。句意：——你读完《简·爱》了吗？——没有，我昨天一直在做作业。由时间状语all day yesterday可知此处需用过去进行时，表示在过去的某段时间一直进行的动作，故A项正确。

2. **D** 考查动词词义辨析。句意：工人们把玻璃制品包装好并且每个盒子上标记“此面朝上”。选项为四个在语义上毫无关联的动词，carry意为“搬运”，deliver意为“递送”，press意为“按，压”，pack意为“打包”。

3. **B** 考查代词。句意为：我将用一半假期来练习英语，另一半用来学习绘画。the other表示两个中的“另一个”，符合题意。another通常表示不定数目中的“另一个”；other’s不能单独使用，一般为each other’s，意为“彼此的”；other表示“别的，另外的”。

4. **A** 考查定语从句。句意：孩童时，杰克在一所以他祖父命名的乡村学校学习过。从句is named after his grandfather缺少主语，所以排除B；因为是非限制性定语从句，所以排除D；which引导非限制性定语从句，代替前面所说的事，所以选A。

5. **C** 考查连词。句意：当她的客人们将要结束用餐的时候，玛丽做了咖啡。so that意为“以便”表示目的，although意为“尽管，虽然”，as if意为“好像”，while意为“当……的时候”，因此while符合句意，选择C。

6. **B** 考查时态。句意：当你到家的时候，打电话给我让我知道你已经安全到家了。B选项使用现在完成时表示将来完成，意为“已经……”。

7. **A** 考查情态动词。句意：耐心点！你不要期待这个世界变化如此之快。can用在否定句中表示“不能；不会”，符合题意。

8. **B** 考查连词用法。句意：这个小男孩不会去睡觉的，除非他妈妈给他讲个故事。由句意可知unless（除非）符合题意。

9. **C** 考查时态和语态。句意：澳洲金矿的发现使成千上万人相信他

们将会发财。make a fortune意为“发财”，make在句中需要使用被动形式，因此排除B和D，题干中led提示时间为过去，因此选择C。

10. **D** 考查名词性从句。句意：我们还没有讨论好把新家具放在哪里。分析句子成分后可知在宾语从句we are going to place our new furniture中缺少地点状语，故用where引导。

Ⅲ.

A

语篇解读：文章介绍了中国二十四节气中的“惊蛰”。

1. **arrival** 考查名词。根据空前the判断应使用arrive的名词形式。

2. **dates** 考查时态。date back to意为“追溯到”，后面加过去的某一个具体时间。尽管其后接的是过去时间，但用作谓语的date 却通常要用一般现在时，而不用一般过去时。

3. **to plough** 考查非谓语动词。此处是It’s time to do sth.的句型。

4. **seriously** 考查与副词相关的固定搭配。take... seriously为固定搭配，意为“认真对待……；严肃对待……”。

5. **how** 考查宾语从句。根据谓语动词show判断此处为宾语从句，又由句意可知应使用how。

6. **when** 考查定语从句。此处先行词为the moment，表示时间，而定语从句中缺乏时间状语，故用when引导定语从句。

7. **causing** 考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词短语作结果状语。

8. **with** 考查与介词相关的固定搭配。be/become popular with为固定搭配，意为“受……的欢迎”。

9. **a** 考查冠词。此处a sport 作同位语，为泛指。

10. **and** 考查连词。此处是“祈使句+and+陈述句”句型，相当于条件状语从句句型。

B

语篇解读：文章介绍了感恩节食物“火鸡”之名因何而来。

1. **traditional**考查形容词。此处为形容词修饰名词。

2. **certainly** 考查副词。此处为副词作状语修饰整个句子。

3. **a** 考查冠词。此处为泛指，应填入不定冠词a。

4. **has meant** 考查时态。根据since ancient times可知，句子应使用完成时态。

5. **appeared** 考查时态。根据in the mid-1500s可知。

6. **of** 考查介词。此处为because of 的固定搭配。

7. **called** 考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语。

8. **its** 考查代词。此处为形容词性物主代词。

9. **which** 考查定语从句。此处为非限制性定语从句，从句中缺乏主语。

10. **though** 考查状语从句。根据句意可知前后为让步状语从句。

强化集训 5

Ⅰ.

1. **something** 考查不定代词。something意为“某事”。

2. **in** 考查动词与介词的固定搭配。句意：各种各样的树上都有叶子，但它们的大小和形状却大相径庭。此处应为differ（from...）in...的结构，即“（与……）在……方面不同”。另外，differ from表示“与……不同”，与be different from同源。

3. **convenient** 考查形容词构词。句意：由于在场的人很多，不便和他长谈。此处是It is convenient（for sb.）to do sth.的结构。

4. **will be lost** 考查一般将来时态的被动语态。句意：如果这家工厂倒闭，数百人会失业。lose jobs 意为“失业”。主语是jobs，谓语动词要用被动语态。条件状语从句中的谓语动词用一般现在时态表示将来。

5. **to reconstruct** 考查动词不定式。句意：战争结束，百废待举，人民全力以赴，重建自己的国家。此处是make every effort to do sth.的结构。

6. **have achieved** 考查“情态动词+have done”的结构。句意：如果你多给她点机会，她可能已经取得更大的成绩了。might have done既可以表示对过去事情的推测（可能性小），又可用于虚拟语气中，此处是if条件状语从句中的虚拟语气。

7. **that** 考查同位语从句。此处考查there is no doubt that...句型，意为“毫无疑问，……”。

8. **because** 考查原因状语从句的强调句型。句意：他上学迟到是因为他感觉身体不太舒服。强调原因状语从句只能使用because，而不能使用as或since等其他原因状语从句连词。

9. **where** 考查定语从句。句意：我们到了一个地方，那里矗立着一座高塔。为了保持句子平衡，句子用了倒装语序，正常语序是where a big tower stood。

10. **spends** 考查时态。句意：我丈夫常占用浴室好几个小时，不过我也是这样。So do I表示前面所述的情况也适合于后面一个人或事物，属于全部倒装结构，助动词do要和前句时态保持一致。如：He liked English. So did I. 他喜欢英语，我也一样。

II.

1. **A** 考查固定句式。句意：汤姆正要关窗户，这时他注意到了一只鸟。be about to do sth. when...表示正要做某事，突然发生了意料之外的事情。本句中的when是一个并列连词，表示“在那时”。

2. **A** 考查动词短语。句意：我妈妈打开抽屉把餐刀和调羹收了起来。put away意为“把……收起来”，put up意为“张贴；搭起”，put on意为“穿上；上演”，put together意为“把……组合起来”，所以A正确。

3. **B** 考查主谓一致和时态。句意：芭芭拉很容易认出来的，因为她是唯一一位穿晚礼服的女士。本句定语从句的先行词是the only one，后面的关系代词who指代先行词在句中作主语，谓语动词应使用单数形式。本句是一个陈述句，只是陈述这个事实而已，故使用一般现在时。

4. **C** 考查省略结构和非谓语。这里把句子补完整就是：Though he was surprised to see us...，在状语从句中，主从句主语一致时，可将从句的主语和系动词省略。

5. **B** 考查代词。句意：除非我们能够消除他们之间的误会，否则他们双方中的任何一方都不会和对方说话。根据关键部分Neither side is prepared to talk，可知是双方，即与两者有关，所以排除A、C、D，而B项the other指两者中的另一个，故为答案。

6. **D** 考查副词词义辨析。句意：这个岛春天和秋天同样迷人，因为这两个季节的天气都很好。partly意为“部分地”，merely意为“仅仅”，

nearly意为“几乎”，equally意为“相等地，同样地”，故选D。

7. **C** 考查时态和语态。句意：琳达保证在客人到达之前就把桌子布置好。make sure后面跟了一个宾语从句。表示“采取措施以保证”之意时，从句中的时态用一般时或完成时。安排桌子的动作是由人发出的，所以要用被动语态。

8. **B** 考查定语从句的关系词。句意：我拒绝接受因别人的过错而对我的责备。在定语从句中，当先行词是指物的不定代词的时候，从句中如果使用关系代词，要用that，故B正确。

9. **A** 考查时态。句意：抱歉，我刚才没有意识到我挡了您的道。这里要用一般过去时，说明说话者刚才没有意识到自己挡了别人的路。

10. **B**考查比较级的用法。句意：布莱克先生非常开心，因为在他的工厂中生产的衣服从来没有这样受欢迎。否定词与比较级连用表示最高级。never与more popular连用，表示“最流行的，最受欢迎的”，故B正确。

Ⅲ.

A

语篇解读：本文介绍了旗袍的历史，包括旗袍的含义、服装特点及其适合的场合。

1. **entered** 考查时态。根据at the beginning of Qing Dynasty可知，这里应用一般过去时。

2. **including** 考查非谓语动词。including 是现在分词，在许多情况下用作介词，后面直接接宾语，含有补充说明之意，表示“包括……在内”。

3. **normally** 考查副词。此处应用副词形式来修饰动词wore。

4. **Although/Though/While** 考查连词。句意：尽管1911年的辛亥革命结束了清朝的统治，但旗袍在这场变革中被保留了下来……

5. **traditional** 考查形容词。修饰名词dress应使用形容词形式。

6. **whose** 考查定语从句。根据对逗号前后内容的分析可以看出空格处所在的句子为非限制性定语从句，空格后的内容与先行词cheongsam之间构成所属关系，故用whose。

7. **length** 考查名词。句意：（旗袍的）袖子可以是短袖，中袖，也可是长袖。length表达“长度”之意。

8. **make** 考查特殊句型。在too+adj.+to do sth.句型中，不定式应用主动形式表达被动含义。

9. **does** 考查半倒装结构中的助动词。文中时态为一般现在时，且句子主语为第三人称单数形式，故用does。

10. **an** 考查冠词。此处为泛指，且空格后为元音开头的单词，因此应填入an。

B

语篇解读：美国加利福尼亚卡拉维拉斯大树州立公园的巨型红杉因受暴雨侵袭，轰然倒下，本文介绍了这棵大树的相关内容。

1. **that/which** 考查定语从句。先行词为a storm，定语从句中缺乏主语。

2. **its/the** 考查限定词。后接名词，故此处应填入形容词性物主代词或者定冠词。

3. **to walk** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作宾语补足语。

4. **through** 考查介词。此处指从内部穿过。

5. **is** 考查时态。此处介绍的是现在的情况，应使用一般现在时。

6. **standing**考查非谓语动词。stand与Many visitors为主动关系，应使用现在分词。

7. **memories** 考查名词复数。根据空后and experiences可知，应使用名词复数形式。

8. **was made** 考查时态和语态。 根据in the 1880s可知为一般过去时态， the hole与make 之间是被动关系。

9. **Eventually** 考查副词。此处应填入副词作状语，修饰整个句子。

10. **largest** 考查形容词最高级。根据空前the和in the world可知。

强化集训 6

1.

1. **a; an** 考查冠词。句意：他是欧洲人，是一个诚实的人，我已决定与他交朋友。发音以元音开头的单词前面要用冠词an。

2. **on** 考查介词。句意：两位运动员相互握手，祝贺比赛获胜。本题考核动词congratulate后的介词搭配。当congratulate表示“因（某事）向（某人）道贺”时，应用congratulate sb. on sth.的结构。

3. **importantly** 考查评注性副词。句意：我很自信、独立、乐观、热情，更重要的是，我很有耐心。此处是副词作状语。

4. **had read** 考查过去完成时态。句意：这本书改变了我的生活。发现这本书之前我已经读过有关这个课题所有其他的书，这是最好的一本，完全不同于其他。此处表示“过去的过去”，应用过去完成时。

5. **consulting** 考查非谓语动词。句意：与经纪人商量之后，这个女演员决定出演这一角色，不过要按照她开出的条件。此处为“连词+分词”结构，consult的逻辑主语为the actress，两者之间是主动关系，故用现在分词。

6. **didn’t ask** 考查时态。句意：我本来会告诉你这个小男孩的故事，但是你没有问我。would have done为虚拟语气的形式，表示对过去事情的假设，意思是“本来会做”，故后面时态用一般过去时。

7. **that** 考查同位语从句。句意：考虑到霍布森不是科班出身的经济学家，他可谓成就非凡。此处that引导的从句作fact的同位语。

8. **that** 考查结果状语从句。句意：他这么急匆匆的，差点把我推下楼梯。 此处为such... that...的结构，意为“如此……以致……”。

9. **with** 考查介词。句意：马克思出生于德国，德语是他的母语。恩格斯也是如此。So it is with sb. 相当于It’s the same with sb. 此结构可替代So do I，但它有着So do I不能替代的功能。使用So it is with sb.结构时应注意两点：①当前面的句子的主语一个是物，一个是人时，只用so it is with sb. ②当前面的句子含有两种不同的谓语时（一个是实义动词，一个是系表结构），只用so it is with sb. 如：Tom is a good student and he studies hard. So it is with John. 汤姆是个好学生，他学习刻苦。约翰也如此。

10. **that** 考查定语从句。句意：对他来说，世界上似乎没有什么是不可能的。当先行词是all, something, nothing等不定代词时，需用that而不用which引导定语从句。

II.

1. **A** 考查非谓语动词。句意：看着同学们的脸，从他们的眼神里我读出了同样的兴奋感。“_____ at my classmates’ faces”是分词短语作伴随状语，此处主语I和look是主动关系，故用现在分词短语作伴随状语，A项正确。

2. **A** 考查动词时态和语态。句意：在美国一些地区的口语中，单词结尾不发[r]这个音。由句意可知sounds和drop之间是被动的关系，故需用被动语态，排除B、D两项，C项为现在进行时的被动语态，表示“正在被……”，不符合此处语境，故A项正确。

3. **B** 考查情态动词。句意：——早上好，我已经同人事部的斯密斯小姐预约过了。——早上好，那你肯定是彼得斯夫人了。由句意可知，此处表示一种肯定推测，可能性很大，故must符合题意，表示“肯定，一定”。

4. **A** 考查非谓语动词。句意：我打电话是询问昨天《中国日报》上广告的职位。这里是定语修饰position，而position和advertise之间是被动关系，排除C和D。B项不定式的被动形式表示“将要被……”，不符合题意。A项过去分词作定语时表示动作的完成和被动，故选A。

5. **B** 考查定语从句。句意：不爱活动或日常饮食多含脂肪的孩子会迅速长胖。分析句子结构可知，先行词children和diet之间构成所属关系，因此使用whose作定语，故选B。what不能引导定语从句；which和that在定语从句中作主语、宾语、表语较多。

6. **D** 考查连词用法。句意：一旦学生们决定了去哪所大学读书，他们就得研究一下入学手续。as意为“当；因为……”，while强调一件事发生时另外一个动作正在进行，until意为“直到”，once意为“一旦”，因此D项符合题意。

7. **C** 考查宾语从句中的连接词。句意：我希望我被喜欢和热爱是因为我的内在美。分析句子成分可知“_____ I am inside”是宾语从句充当介词for的宾语，在此宾语从句中缺少表语，故用what引导。

8. **B** 考查表语从句。句意：查尔斯·狄更斯喜欢自己的小说《大卫·科波菲尔》的部分原因是这本小说和他自己的生活十分接近。that引导表语从句，在句中起连接作用，不充当任何成分，没有任何实际的意思。

9. **B** 考查名词性从句。句意：一些人所认为的不利条件，在很多其

他人看来就是一种有利因素。what引导主语从句，在句中充当regard的宾语，构成regard sth. as sth.的结构，意为“把……看成……”，故选B。

10. **D** 考查虚拟语气。If条件句是我们选择正确答案的关键。句意：要是当时下了哪怕一丁点儿雨，现在的情况也会好很多！我的蔬菜也就不会死了。真实情况是过去没有下雨，所以我的蔬菜干死了，可知蔬菜干死应该是发生在过去，故使用wouldn’t have died，即选D。

Ⅲ.

A

语篇解读：本文介绍了中国传统文化中发红包的习俗，列举了几种发红包的场合。

1. **and** 考查连词。前后句为并列关系。

2. **given** 考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词作后置定语。

3. **to wish**考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作后置定语。

4. **where** 考查定语从句。此处定语从句的先行词为the wedding reception，定语从句中缺乏地点状语，故使用关系副词where，相当于“介词+which”。

5. **names** 考查名词复数。可根据空前their判断。

6. **immediately** 考查副词。此处为副词修饰动词。

7. **what** 考查宾语从句。宾语从句中缺少宾语。

8. **are expected** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文可知为一般现在时态，the bride and groom和expect之间为被动关系。

9. **more** 考查形容词比较级。可根据空后than what they received at their own wedding 判断。

10. **a** 考查冠词。此处为泛指。

B

语篇解读：本文介绍了一位柬埔寨人通过摄影保护野生动物的事迹。

1. **has used** 考查时态。根据Since 2012可知用现在完成时态。

2. **which** 考查非限制性定语从句。先行词为a photo project，后面定

语从句缺少主语。

3. **carefully** 考查副词。此处为副词作状语，修饰动词。

4. **importance** 考查名词。根据空前the判断此处应填入名词。

5. **increasing** 考查非谓语动词。此处为with 的复合结构。its population和increase 之间是主动关系。

6. **of** 考查介词。lack 作名词时，有词组（the）lack of sth. 表示“缺乏某物”。

7. **more** 考查形容词比较级。根据前后语境，尤其是and fewer people判断，此处应填入名词。

8. **is** 考查时态。此处所述是一般情况。动名词短语作主语，后面动词用单数形式。

9. **a** 考查冠词。根据上下文此处为泛指，应填入不定冠词a。

10. **teaching** 考查非谓语动词。look forward to 意为“盼望”，to为介词，后面接名词、代词或动名词作宾语。

强化集训 7

Ⅰ.

1. **feet** 考查名词复数。句意：只要我能够自食其力，不依附于自己的丈夫，嫁给谁我父亲倒并不介意。根据空前two判断，应该用复数形式。

2. **being**考查非谓语动词。句意：此次美术展绝非失败，而是巨大的成功。far from意为“远非，毫不，简直不”，from为介词，后面接动名词形式。

3. **better** 考查比较级。句意：你练习得越多，理解得就越透。此处为“the+比较级，the+比较级”句型，意为“越……越……”，表示一方的程度随着另一方的变化而变化。

4. **are waiting** 考查现在进行时态。句意：——我还没吃完晚餐。——但是朋友在等我们。根据上下语境可知应用现在进行时态。

5. **trying** 考查动名词作宾语。句意：我喜欢葡萄酒的味道，喜欢品尝不同的口味。enjoy后面接动名词作宾语。

6. **would（should/could/might）have been** 考查虚拟语气。句意：我做过的一切都是正确的，要是我少做了一点点，就会出错。根据What I did was right可知为过去时间，虚拟过去时是表示与过去事实相反的假设，if从句的谓语形式用过去完成时，即“had+过去分词”，主句用would/should/could/might+have+过去分词。

7. **that** 考查宾语从句。句意：他说那本书很有趣，所有小孩都喜欢读。宾语从句中的that可以省略，但如果谓语动词后跟有两个或更多个并列的宾语从句，第二个（和第三个）连接词that不可省略。

8. **what** 考查状语从句。句意：女性无论如何努力去改善自己的处境，总会受到一些障碍或看法的压制。此处what作do的宾语，no matter what 引导让步状语从句。

9. **where** 考查定语从句。句意：英语是一种“词序固定”的语言，在这种语言中每个短语都有固定的位置。定语从句each phrase has a fixed position不缺少主语和宾语，从句先行词是fixed-word-order language，它既不表示时间，也不表示原因，此处用where来指代先行词，表示“在‘词序固定’这样的语言中”，作状语。

10. **So** 考查倒装。句意：光传播如此快，我们几乎没法想象它的速度。在so... that...结构中，若将so+adj./adv.置于句首，则其后的主句要用部分倒装。

II.

1. **D** 考查倒装。句意：尽管她尽力试了，但休还是打不开门。as引导的让步状语从句，应将状语、表语，甚至谓语提前构成形式上的倒装。很明显前后两句意思相反，as表示“虽然，尽管”。

2. **C** 考查时态。句意：这么早做计划没有什么意义——到明年很多事情就会变了。一般现在时指经常发生的事或存在的状态，由句意可知本句表达目前的状况，应用一般现在时，故答案为C。

3. **B** 考查短语辨析。句意：我能忍受房子的不规整，但是我讨厌它不干净。come up with意为“提出”，put up with意为“忍受”，turn to意为“转向”，stick to意为“坚持”，所以应选B。

4. **B** 考查非谓语动词。句意：他看到的下一件事是从屋后面升起来的烟。rise（上升）是不及物动词，没有被动形式，故排除D。from behind the house作名词smoke 的定语，能表明事情正在发生，因此用现

在分词形式，故选B。

5. **D** 考查倒装句。句意：只有当他到了茶社他才意识到这是他去年来过的同样的地方。only+状语从句置于句首时，主句需用部分倒装形式，did需提到主语前面，故选D。注意，only后面接状语才能倒装，如果接主语或宾语就不是倒装句了。

6. **A** 考查时态。句意：当爱丽丝醒过来的时候，她不知道她在那里躺了多久了。根据句意可知，当她醒过来的时候，是一个过去的时间，那么她躺在那里很久是在这之前就发生的事情，应使用过去完成时或过去完成进行时，此处强调爱丽丝醒来之前一直躺在那里，故使用过去完成进行时，A正确。

7. **C** 考查定语从句。句意：这个奖项将会颁发给故事最有想象力的作家。定语从句whose story shows the most imagination修饰先行词the writer, whose在句中作定语。

8. **D** 考查情态动词和虚拟语气。句意：他们本该午饭时到达，但他们的航班延误了。will have done表示将来可以完成；can have done意为“可能做过”，表示对过去行为的怀疑，用于疑问句；must have done意为“一定做过某事”，表示对过去事情的肯定推测；should have done表示本来应该做某事，而实际没做。由but their flight was delayed这样的结果可知他们本来该到达，故本题选D。

9. **A** 考查冠词。句意：人们通常认为男孩必须学会独立，要像个男人一样奋斗。两空均填不定冠词，表泛指。

10. **C** 考查动词辨析。句意:威廉姆发现读书越来越困难，因为他的视力开始下降了。disappear意为“消失”；fall意为“掉下，落下；摔倒，跌倒；倒塌，崩溃”；fail意为“衰退；没法做到；失败；不及格”；damage意为“破坏”。本题中的fail应指“衰退”，故C正确。

III.

A

语篇解读：本文介绍了剪纸这项在中国受欢迎的民间艺术。考古学发现剪纸的传统可以追溯到公元6 世纪。

1. **kinds** 考查名词复数。根据one of the most popular可知后面的名词应使用复数。

2. **dates** 考查时态。当表示回溯到过去某时间时，用date back to或date from均可，用作谓语的date 通常要用一般现在时，而不用一般过去时。如：The castle dates back to the 14th century. 这座城堡是14世纪修建的。但如果所谈论的主体现在已不存在，则可以用一般过去时。如：The church, which dated back to the 13th century, was destroyed in an earthquake two years ago. 那座教堂是13世纪建成的，两年前在一次地震中被毁了。

3. **earlier** 考查比较级。可根据than that判断。

4. **commonly** 考查副词。此处为副词修饰动词作状语。

5. **that/who** 考查定语从句。此处为限制性定语从句，修饰先行词those people，定语从句中缺乏主语。

6. **Made** 考查非谓语动词。make与paper cutting之间是被动关系。

7. **would fail** 考查虚拟语气。与现在的事实相反，故应用would+动词原形。

8. **while** 考查连词。此处为前后两种情况的“对照”，需使用while，表示“然而”。

9. **are held** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文可知用一般现在时态。exhibitions and exchanges 和hold之间是被动关系。

10. **to** 考查介词。此处为from A to B的搭配。

B

语篇解读：文章介绍了海明威的《老人与海》的故事梗概。

1. **and** 考查连词。此处为连词固定结构between A and B。

2. **without** 考查介词。根据上下文可知84天来他空手而归。

3. **so** 考查代词。“so+助动词+主语”这一结构主要用来说明前面所说的情况也同样适用于后面的人或物，意为“……也一样”。

4. **to pull** 考查非谓语动词。此处为固定搭配try to do sth.意为“尽力做某事”。

5. **tired** 考查非谓语动词。此处过去分词相当于形容词，作表语。

6. **biggest** 考查形容词最高级。根据空前the 和he has seen in his life可知应填入最高级。

7. **is attacked** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文可知用一般现在时态。

the boat和attack之间为被动关系。

8. **yourself/yourselves** 考查代词。此处应为反身代词作宾语。

9. **books** 考查名词复数。

10. **being** 考查非谓语动词。此处为have trouble（in）doing sth.的结构。

强化集训 8

Ⅰ.

1. **it/it's** 考查代词。句意：他们发现与我们中国人一起工作很愉快。填入it，作形式宾语，真正的宾语为that they worked with us Chinese。填入it's，it在宾语从句中作形式主语，构成It's+adj.+that...句型。

2. **through/from**考查"介词+which"引导的定语从句。句意：广东因此成为一个窗口，使得中外人士得以相互密切关注。

3. **successfully** 考查副词及构词法。句意：北京成功地举办了非凡的2008奥运会之后，现在正站在一个新的起点上去举办2022年冬奥会。此处是副词修饰动词host，作状语。

4. **is being built**考查动词时态、语态及主谓一致。由时间状语at present可知此处动词表示的动作正在进行；主语与所填词是被动关系；"many a+名词单数"作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

5. **causing** 考查现在分词作状语。句意：首都发生了地震，引发民众恐慌。此处是现在分词短语作结果状语。现在分词短语在句中作结果状语时，通常位于句末，中间可以用逗号隔开，表示自然的结果。有时为了加强语气，还可以在分词前加thus。

6. **were** 考查虚拟语气。句意：我经常沉默。因此他说话声很大，就像我聋了一样。由此可知"我聋了"是虚拟的情况，事实上并没聋，是对现在事实的虚拟。

7. **before** 考查状语从句。句意：我还没有来得及问他们的名字，归还我丢失的钱包的那对年轻的夫妻就离开了。before意为"在……之前"，before有多种不同的翻译方法。

8. **what**考查名词性从句。句意：她自由地去她喜欢去的地方并且做

她喜欢做的事。此句中， what引导的从句作do 的宾语，what作like的宾语。另外where引导的从句作介词的宾语，意思接近定语从句the place where。

9. **which/that**考查定语从句关系词。句意：一个小时内，我们就可以旅行到我们的祖先们需要很多天才能到达的地方。空格后接的是谓语would have taken，所以空格处待填入的关系词在从句中充当的应该是主语成分，故为which/that。关系副词where不能在从句中作主语。

10. **allowed** 考查独立主格结构。句意：如果时间允许的话，明天抵达之后，我们想去那个公园。此处独立主格结构为“名词+过去分词”，allowed的逻辑主语是time，而不是they。time allowed在句中作条件状语，相当于If time is allowed。

II.

1. **D** 考查定语从句。句意：泰德这周末来只穿了些短裤和一件体恤衫，在这样的天气这么做真是愚蠢的事情。分析句子结构可知，该句为定语从句，首先排除A和C；根据空前的逗号可知，该句为非限制性定语从句，排除B。该从句应用which引导，which在从句中作主语，代指前面的整个句子。

2. **A** 考查时态。句意：如果你不喜欢你已经点的饮料，那么就丢掉它，去尝试一款不同的。分析句子结构可知，本句包含了一个省略了that的定语从句，由于饮料是过去订购的，所以应该用一般过去时，所以选A。

3. **B** 考查动词词义辨析和搭配。句意：玛丽，我提醒了约翰他要帮你的承诺。remind sb. of sth.意为“使某人想起某事，提醒某人某事”，符合语境，故选B。warn sb. of sth.意为“警告某人某事”；advise sb. of sth.意为“通知/（正式）告知某人某事”，相当于tell sb. about sth.。

4. **D** 考查不定代词。句意：我一分钱也没花就得到了这辆自行车——我的朋友买了一辆新的，就把她这辆给了我。for nothing意为“不花钱，免费”。

5. **B** 考查交际用语。句意：简今晚不会和我们一起吃饭。汤姆也不会。如果用倒装，应该是Neither/Nor will Tom. 故选B。

6. **B** 考查介词。句意：这家商店将会关门维修，直到有新的通知才重新开张。until意为“直到”，符合句意，故选B。

7. **C** 考查非谓语动词。句意：那个由桥与本土连接起来的小岛很容易抵达。此处的非谓语动词是用来作后置定语的，the island与join之间是被动关系，故用过去分词表被动。

8. **A** 考查比较级的否定用法。句意：为史蒂文森先生工作真好，我实在找不到比他更好的老板了。否定词couldn't与better连用，表示"不能更好了"，等于最高级。still better不能用于否定句中。

9. **D** 考查非谓语动词。句意：萨拉假装很开心，对于那场争论只字不提。这里"假装"和"不提"两个动作显然是同时发生的，应该用现在分词作伴随状语。

10. **A** 考查连词。句意：那是一顿不错的晚餐，尽管有点贵。though意为"尽管"，引导让步状语从句，该句是省略句，补全后为though it was a little expensive。

Ⅲ.

A

语篇解读：文章介绍了中国的"二十四节气"被列入联合国非物质文化遗产名录的情况。

1. **considered** 考查非谓语动词。此处是过去分词短语作后置定语。

2. **was announced** 考查时态和语态。根据前文时间和后文on Nov. 28可知用一般过去时态。主语the addition与动词announce之间是被动关系。

3. **which** 考查非限制性定语从句。此处which指代前面的第11次会议。

4. **the** 考查冠词。the number of意为"……的数量"。

5. **into** 考查介词。此处是divide... into...的固定搭配，意为"将……分为……"。

6. **observation（s）** 考查名词。根据people's名词所有格判断。

7. **its** 考查代词。此处考查形容词性物主代词。

8. **agricultural** 考查形容词。修饰后面的名词production，需使用agriculture的形容词形式。

9. **is regarded**考查时态和语态。此处是一般情况介绍，故为一般现

在时态。the Beginning of Spring和regard 之间是被动关系。

10. **countries** 考查名词复数。

B

语篇解读：本文介绍了美国欲建有关奴隶制主题博物馆的相关报道。

1. **whom** 考查定语从句。此处是非限制性定语从句，先行词为African-Americans，指人，故为whom。

2. **and** 考查连词。前后为并列关系。

3. **were buried** 考查时态和语态。20,000 people—men, women and children和bury之间是被动关系。根据前文可知动作发生在过去，故用一般过去时。

4. **visitor's** 考查名词所有格。前后之间是所属关系。

5. **will** 考查时态。根据上下文可知为一般将来时态。

6. **their** 考查代词。此处为形容词性物主代词。

7. **to work** 考查非谓语动词。此处是make sb. do 的被动语态，to应还原。

8. **from** 考查介词。此处是separate A from B的被动结构。

9. **an** 考查冠词。此处为泛指，后面单词发音为元音开头，应填入an。

10. **including** 考查非谓语动词。including是介词，后接名词，而included则置于名词后，相当于including+n.，例如：three children included相当于including three children。

强化集训 9

Ⅰ.

1. **itself** 考查反身代词。句意：科学家们已经发现了令人瞩目的新证据，能证明人体在睡眠状态下是如何自我修复的。此处为反身代词作宾语。

2. **for** 考查介词。句意：不要等待好事降临，你要向幸福进发。此

处是wait for 的搭配，意为“等待……”。

3. **the better** 考查形容词比较级。句意：如果经理必须从这两个人中选择一个，他会说约翰是比较好的选择。表示“两者中较……的那个人或物”时，在比较级前加定冠词the。

4. **occurred**考查时态。句意：我意识到我可以不学中文就去中国教英语了。根据I could teach English. 可知为一般过去时态。此处是It occurs to sb. that...句型。

5. **borrowed**考查非谓语动词作后置定语。句意：怀特老师向学生们展示了一些前天从图书馆借来的老地图。borrow和maps 是被动关系，根据句意borrow的动作已经完成，故为过去分词。

6. **would have got through** 考查虚拟语气的省略。句意：要是那时他学习努力，他去年就通过考试了。此句省略了虚拟条件句中的连词if，而将had提到主语之前，即倒装结构。根据last year 判断与过去事实相反，主句谓语用would（should, could, might）+have+过去分词的形式。

7. **where** 考查名词性从句。句意：他们顺原路又折回到他们出发的地点。句中to为介词，后面应当填入一个宾语从句的连接词，由于started（出发）为不及物动词，结合句意可知，此处应填入where，表示地点，where they started即“他们出发的地点”，为宾语从句，充当to的宾语。

8. **However** 考查状语从句。句意：无论人们有多富裕，他们似乎总是渴望挣到更多的钱。however用作连接副词，相当于no matter how，引导让步状语从句，意思是“不管怎样,无论如何”，具体结构有以下两种：however+形容词+主语+系动词；however+副词+主语+谓语。如：However fast he runs, he can’t catch up with us. 无论他跑得多快也不能赶上我们。

9. **where**考查定语从句关系词。句意：请记住，最深的感情关系是那种在其中彼此间的爱超过彼此间的需要的关系。这里where引导的定语从句修饰先行词one，此处one指代的是relationship。从定语从句的结构来看，定语从句不缺主语和宾语，故引导词where在从句中充当的是状语。

10. **are** 考查完全倒装。句意：山脚下有一个美丽的湖，湖边有些农舍掩映在树林中。地点状语提前，为了保持句子平衡且谓语是be, stand, sit, lie, come 等动词时，应使用完全倒装。题中两个句子都是完全倒装

的句子。

II.

1. **D** 考查动词时态。句意：早在二战前美国和欧洲就进行过这种实验。根据before the Second World War可知此处是指过去的过去，应该用过去完成时；而experiment和conduct是被动关系，所以用过去完成时的被动形式，故答案选D。

2. **B** 考查名词性从句。句意：巴巴拉·琼斯给予她粉丝的是坦诚和快乐。“_____Barbara Jones offers to her fans”在句中作主语，为主语从句。what引导主语从句并且在从句中作offers的宾语，故选B项。

3. **C** 考查时态。句意：在过去的三个月里，汤姆每晚都在图书馆里工作。题干中出现的over the last three months用于现在完成进行时或现在完成时。

4. **A** 考查非谓语动词。句意：数字经常被更新是很重要的。It’s important for sth. to be done是固定用法。句中的时间状语regularly 表示经常发生，因此排除B、D两项，又因为figures 是被更新的，故选A项。

5. **B** 考查非限制性定语从句。句意：玛丽对杰克要比对其他人友善得多，这无疑让其他人很伤心。逗号后的非限制性定语从句中缺少主语，which引导非限制性定语从句指代整个主句的内容。

6. **C** 考查时态。根据语境That must have been a long trip.判断这是对过去事情的推测，而“花了我们整整一周的时间到达那里”也应该是过去的事情，所以用一般过去时。

7. **D** 考查连词的用法。句意：尽管排球是她的主项，她也很擅长打篮球。根据上下文逻辑关系应选while，表示让步。

8. **C** 考查虚拟语气。句意：也许如果当时我学的是理科而不是文科的话，那么我（现在）就可以给你更多的帮助了。本题考查虚拟语气。根据then一词可以确定此处表示与过去事实相反，if引导的从句部分用had done形式，故选C项。

9. **B** 考查非谓语动词。句意：艾玛，你坐下吧。老这么站着你会累的。to keep表示将来，而having kept和to have kept表示动作先发生。make yourself more tired与keeping on your feet同时进行，故选B。

10. **D** 考查介词。句意：有了这项新的科技，水下的山谷就可以被

拍成彩色照片。这里be taken是“被拍成”的意思。in colour是一个固定词组，是“以彩色的形式”的意思。

III.

A

语篇解读：文章介绍了中国风筝的历史以及与风筝相关的历史趣闻。

1. **exactly** 考查副词。此处为副词作状语。

2. **from** 考查介词。此处为keep... from doing sth.的结构，意为“阻止……做某事”。

3. **are made** 考查时态和语态。根据前文可知为一般现在时态。主语为Kites，与make 之间是被动关系。

4. **making** 考查非谓语动词。此处为spend... doing sth.的搭配。

5. **when** 考查定语从句。先行词为200 B.C，后面定语从句中缺乏时间状语。

6. **how** 考查名词性从句。此处为宾语从句。

7. **the** 考查冠词。序数词前面用定冠词。

8. **If** 考查状语从句。根据上下文语境和后文中but if it did not fly well, it was a bad omen.可知。

9. **Italians** 考查名词复数。

10. **flying** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动名词作主语。

B

语篇解读：夏季是英国最温暖的季节，晴天居多，白昼时长，正是举办各类庆典节日和活动比赛的最佳季节。

1. **comes** 考查时态和主谓一致。根据上下文可知为一般现在时态。who指代先行词everybody，后面动词用单数。

2. **who** 考查定语从句。先行词为those，指代人，故关系代词用who。

3. **largest** 考查形容词最高级。根据空前the 以及in Europe判断。

4. **held** 考查非谓语动词。hold与it之间是被动关系。

5. **colourfully** 考查副词。此处副词作状语，修饰动词dress。

6. **popularity** 考查名词。根据空前its可知需要名词形式。

7. **attracting**考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词作结果状语。

8. **with** 考查介词。此处为be filled with的固定搭配。

9. **will rise** 考查时态。此处为if 引导的条件状语从句，符合“主将从现”的规则。

10. **or** 考查连词。根据句意可知空格前后为并列的结构，表示一种选择，故填入or。

强化集训 10

I.

1. **tomatoes** 考查名词的复数。句意：茄子啊，黄瓜啊，卷心菜啊，西红柿啊，各种蔬菜摆满了货架。可根据空前列举的名词复数判断。

2. **among/with** 考查介词。句意：如今，汉字在西方的年轻人中很流行。be popular with意为“受……欢迎”，若其后接的是一个复数名词或表示复数意义的集合名词，也可用介词among代替with。

3. **unfortunately** 考查副词。句意：这名男子可能还杀害过其他人，只可惜我们没有确凿的证据。此处是副词作状语。

4. **arrived** 考查时态。句意：我正要打电话给他的时候，他的信到了。在固定句型中“主语+is/was doing sth. when...”的句型中，主句用过去进行时，从句应使用一般过去时。

5. **to make** 考查动词不定式作后置定语。句意：我很荣幸有这个宝贵的机会在此演讲。

6. **was** 考查时态。句意：此事肯定是他干的，因为房间里没有别人。must have done 是对过去情况的推测，因此判断后面的原因为一般过去时态。

7. **How**考查名词性从句。句意：生活的10%即发生在你身上的事情，而另外的90%在于你如何应对。空格前为介词of，后面缺少宾语从句的引导词，而该宾语从句中you react to it主谓宾结构完整，故需填入状语，引导词how表示方式，符合句法和句意，故为答案。

8. **If/When** 考查状语从句。句意：假如你想取得高学位，就应该趁热打铁。根据上下句意判断。

9. **who**考查定语从句。句意：只有无羞耻感的人才能做出这样不光彩的事。 此处先行词为those,指人，关系代词只能用who。

10. **is**考查There be结构和主谓一致。句意：我们学校历史悠久。目前校园里有一座塔和一些房子。根据at present判断为目前状况，又根据临近原则，临近主语为a tower，故为is。

II.

1. **C** 考查冠词。句意：萨拉满意地看着那幅已画完的画。第一空特指“已经画完的画”，第二空考查固定短语with satisfaction，意为“满意地”，作状语。

2. **D** 考查形式主语句型。句意：总统能够做什么来制止罢工一点也不清楚。It是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的what the president can do to end the strike, what引导主语从句，并且在从句中作do的宾语，故D正确。

3. **B** 考查动词短语辨析。句意：玛丽在课堂上确实很擅长记笔记。她几乎可以记下老师说的每一个词。put out意为“扑灭”，put down意为“记下”，put away意为“收起来”，put together意为“放在一起”，根据题意，应选B。

4. **A** 考查独立主格结构。句中逗号前后没有连词连接，说明逗号后面不是句子，而是一个短语。weather与permit构成主动关系，所以使用现在分词，构成独立主格。weather permitting=if weather permits，故A正确。

5. **A** 考查倍数的表达。句意：这个饭店没有我们去的另外一个饭店一半好。此处是“倍数+as+adj.+as...”句型，这里的half就表示倍数，所以放在前面。

6. **D** 考查情态动词的用法。句意：我不必用闹钟把自己叫醒，因为每天早上六点钟都会有一列火车从我家旁边经过。couldn’t意为“不能”，mustn’t意为“禁止，不许可”，shouldn’t意为“不应该”，needn’t意为“不必”，结合句意，应选D 。

7. **D** 考查状语从句的省略。句意：电影的历史短得多，尤其是将它与诸如音乐、绘画等艺术形式相比较时。主语是film，与compare构成被

动关系，故选D。when compared to相当于when it is compared to。

8. **C** 考查时态和语态。句意：我一整个下午都在做数学题，那些数字在我的眼前转。前半句用过去完成进行时，后半句用一般过去时，只有这样才能表示“过去的过去”。

9. **B** 考查并列句中连词辨析。句意：你必须让路，否则卡车过不去。

10. **A** 考查动词词义辨析。句意：如果她不想去，你说什么也劝服不了她。

Ⅲ.

A

语篇解读：文章属于说明文，介绍了云南的少数民族——白族。

1. **them** 考查代词。此句是并列句，非定语从句，容易误填whom。

2. **whose** 考查定语从句。此句是非限制性定语从句，表示“某物的”，故为whose。

3. **being** 考查非谓语动词。此处为独立主格结构，容易误填are。

4. **usually** 考查构词法。此处为副词修饰动词。

5. **traditional** 考查构词法。根据中心词architecture可知需要形容词。

6. **people** 考查名词复数。people当“人口”讲时，单复数形式相同。

7. **combines** 考查主谓一致。根据前后文可知此句为一般现在时态，先行词为opera，故定语从句谓语用单数。

8. **is served** 考查时态和语态。根据全文时态和语义可知此句为一般现在时态，且需使用被动语态。

9. **on** 考查介词。在具体某一天用介词on。

10. **known** 考查非谓语动词。know和tree之间是被动关系，故用过去分词。

B

语篇解读：本文介绍了有关法国港口城市波尔多的奴隶贸易历史。

1. **was** 考查时态和语态。根据hundreds of years ago可知此句为一般

过去时态。

2. **slaves** 考查名词复数。根据130,000可知，应填入复数。

3. **helping** 考查非谓语动词。此处是现在分词短语作伴随状语。

4. **director** 考查构词法。可根据空前the判断。

5. **with** 考查介词。deal with意为“处理”。

6. **where** 考查定语从句。此处为限制性定语从句，先行词为the city，从句中缺少状语。

7. **are named**考查时态和语态。此句为一般现在时态。 name after与12 city streets in Bordeaux之间是被动关系。

8. **the** 考查冠词。此处为特指。

9. **its** 考查代词。根据空后role 判断此处应填入形容词性物主代词。

10. **what** 考查名词性从句。they believe为插入语，what作do的宾语。

强化集训 11

I.

1. **judgment** 考查名词。句意：新政府将对其利害得失做出判断，并采取相应的行动。根据空前a 判断此处应填入名词形式。

2. **words** 考查名词复数。句意：在听了她动人的故事后，每个人都被感动得无以言表。beyond words意为“无法用语言表达”，可理解为“不可言传”。

3. **widely** 考查副词。句意：原子能已发现多年，但至今仍未广泛用于工业或我们的日常生活中。 此处是副词作状语修饰动词。

4. **will make** 考查一般将来时态。句意：谢谢您能理解。我保证一定给您补上。此处表示说话时临时做出的决定。

5. **to protect** 考查动词不定式。句意：为了保护这种动物，当地政府已建立了保护区。此处为不定式作目的状语。

6. **didn’t know** 考查虚拟语气。句意：那时我们不知道他的电话号码，否则我们就给他打电话了。此处为otherwise, or, without, but for引出

的含蓄虚拟条件句。

7. **that** 考查名词性从句。句意：很久以前，人们普遍认为地球是平的。此处that引导的从句作belief 的同位语。

8. **how** 考查状语从句。句意：不管任务如何艰巨，我们必须按时完成。no matter how引导让步状语从句。

9. **where**考查定语从句。句意：在学院里，柏拉图采用的教学方法是组织辩论，在辩论中，两个或多个学生对一个论题持不同观点。此处应用where引导定语从句，表示“在辩论中”。

10. **that** 考查强调句型。句意：直到他们跟我推心置腹地交谈，我才意识到自己的错误。此处是It is not until... that...的强调句型。

II.

1. 第一句**same**前加**the** 此处为固定搭配at the same time，意为“同时”。

2. 第二句**him**改为**you** 考查人称一致。

3. 第三句**that**改为**which** 此处为非限制性定语从句，只能用which指代前文内容。

4. 第三句**great**改为**greatly** 此处为副词作状语，修饰动词。

5. 第四句**friend**改为**friends** 考查名词数的一致。根据more判断，应填入复数。

6. 第四句**serve**改为**serving** 考查非谓语动词。此处为by doing的结构。

7. 第五句**most** 改为**more** 考查形容词比较级。根据上下文可知此处为两者的比较。

8. 第六句去掉**at** there为副词，前面不需要介词。

9. 第六句中**improve**改为**improvement** 考查名词构词法。根据a rapid判断，此处应填入名词。

10. 第七句中**great**前加**a** have a great time为固定搭配，意为“玩得非常开心”。

III.

A

语篇解读：本文介绍了有关茶的来历。

1. **drinking** 考查非谓语。充当介词of的宾语，需使用drink的动名词形式。

2. **that** 考查强调句型。It is/was not until... that...为特殊强调句型。

3. **started** 考查时态。根据In 1840判断此句为一般过去时态。

4. **was served** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文判断此句为一般过去时态。the evening meal in her household与serve之间是被动关系。

5. **ladies** 考查名词复数。根据other判断。

6. **quickly** 考查副词。此处为副词修饰动词作状语。

7. **and** 考查连词。空格前后之间为并列关系。

8. **which** 考查定语从句。此句为非限制性定语从句，从句中缺少主语。

9. **of** 考查介词。consist of意为“由……组成”，一般不用被动。

10. **served** 考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语，tea or coffee与serve 之间是被动关系。

B

语篇解读：文章介绍了全球有名的圆周率日（Pi Day）。

1. **is divided** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文可知此句应为一般现在时态。the distance around a circle与divide之间是被动关系。

2. **construction** 考查名词构成。根据后文and architecture可知。

3. **an** 考查冠词。此处为泛指，且后面的单词irrational发音以元音开头。

4. **is** 考查时态。根据前后文可知此句应为一般现在时态。

5. **started** 考查时态。根据in 1988可知，此处为一般过去时。

6. **who** 考查定语从句。先行词为those，指代人，且定语从句中缺少主语。

7. **filling** 考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词短语作后置定语。a

sweet和fill 之间是主动关系。

8. **best** 考查副词的最高级。可根据空前the判断。

9. **in** 考查介词。此处为in a way的搭配。

10. **married** 考查过去分词。“get+过去分词”，表示被动，相当于“be+过去分词”。

强化集训 12

Ⅰ.

1. **children; a** 句意：杰克的父母有两个孩子了，但他们还想要一个孩子。前者根据two判断为名词复数；后者序数词前面用不定冠词表示“又，再”。

2. **among** 考查介词。句意：14名模特儿在周五的世界超模赛中获奖，4名中国模特儿名列其中。表示“是……中间（两者以上）的几个”时，应该用介词among。

3. **However** 考查转折副词。句意：有些粮食作物歉收，但棉花的收成相当不错。根据句意可知两句为转折关系。

4. **whom** 考查关系代词。句意：前几天他在街上碰到了一位已经有很长时间没有见过面的朋友。此处whom引导非限制性定语从句，在从句中充当seen的宾语。

5. **to interview** 考查动词不定式作宾语补足语。句意：我问她是否允许我采访她，她欣然同意了。此处是allow sb. to do sth.的结构。

6. **met** 句意：他是我认识的很少几个能交心的朋友之一，我希望我们常能见面。wish后面的宾语从句用虚拟语气。根据前文为一般现在时态，宾语从句应为一般过去时态。

7. **It** 考查主语从句。句意：目前还不清楚，该路段何时可通行使用。此处it为形式主语，真实主语为when the new road is to be opened to traffic。

8. **as** 考查状语从句。句意：尽管外面雨下得很大，但是他们还是早早出发了。此处as意为“尽管”，通常从句要倒装，倒装的方法是将从句的表语或状语放在as之前，而用though引导让步状语从句时句子则不必倒装（口语中也可倒装）。

9. **that** 考查关系代词。句意：他高兴地谈起了令他感兴趣的那位作家和他的作品。当先行词既是人也是物时，只能用that。

10. **would have seen**考查省略和虚拟语气。句意：要是你昨天来，你就会见到他了。当if引导的虚拟条件从句中含有had, were, should等时，如将if省略，则要将had, were, should等移到主语前，构成倒装句，由此判断主句谓语为would have seen。

II.

1. 第二句中**Therefore** 改为**However** 考查连接副词。上下文为转折关系。

2. 第三句中去掉**of** 考查介词。此处among为介词，后面可以直接加宾语。

3. 第三句中**breads**改为**bread** 考查名词单复数。bread为不可数名词。

4. 第四句中**is**改为**are** 考查There be结构。根据several reasons确定谓语应为are。

5. 第五句中**an**改为**the** 考查冠词用法。根据后置定语of breakfast判断此处为特指。

6. 第六句中**that**改为**what** 考查宾语从句。此处宾语从句作about的宾语，意为“不知道平衡的饮食是什么”，故应用what引导。

7. 第七句**much**改为**many** 考查名词的数。too many 修饰可数名词复数，too much修饰不可数名词。

8. 第七句中**time**后面加**to** 考查动词不定式作后置定语。

9. 第八句中**will**改为**should** 考查情态动词。此处表示“应当，应该”。

10. 最后一句**healthy**改为**healthier** 此处为“the+比较级, the+比较级”的结构。

III.

A

语篇解读：文章介绍了马可·波罗那个时代的一些状况。

1. **that** 考查强调句型。此处强调时间状语in that time。

2. **had traveled** 考查时态。根据前后文可知，此处为过去完成时态。

3. **to return** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作宾语补足语，构成invite sb. to do sth.的结构。

4. **the** 考查冠词。大洋前面要加定冠词。

5. **on** 考查介词。此处意为“乘骆驼”，应为on camels。

6. **who** 考查非限制性定语从句。先行词为Marco，故使用关系代词who。

7. **used**考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语。

8. **was put** 考查时态和语态。根据前后文可知，此处应为一般过去时态。主语Marco Polo与put之间为被动关系。

9. **writing**考查时态和语态。此处为spend...（in）doing sth.的结构。

10. **the most popular** 考查形容词的最高级。空格前无不定冠词a，因此根据in Europe可判断，此处应为最高级。

B

语篇解读：本文主要介绍了瑞士的垃圾回收利用经验。

1. **was sent** 考查时态和语态。根据last year判断，应使用一般过去时，又由Less than 1 percent of Swedish household waste和send之间是被动关系可知，应填入was sent。

2. **which** 考查定语从句。此处是非限制性定语从句。which指代前面整个情况，在定语从句中作主语。

3. **paying** 考查非谓语动词。rather than 意为“而不是，而没有”，侧重客观上的差别，与前文paying expensive transport costs...对应。

4. **countries** 考查名词复数。根据空前one of the first可知此处应填入复数名词。

5. **its** 考查代词。此处是形容词性物主代词。

6. **what** 考查名词性从句。此处是what引导宾语从句，作介词of的宾语。

7. **environmental** 考查构词法。此处是形容词作定语。

8. **a** 考查冠词。此处为泛指。

9. **service** 考查构词法。根据空前冠词a判断，应填入名词。

10. **to reduce** 考查非谓语动词。此处是动词不定式作目的状语。

强化集训 13

Ⅰ.

1. **expressions** 考查名词以及复数。句意：笑是最具感染力的情感表达方式之一。根one of...判断此处应填入名词复数。expression为“表达”之意不可数，为“神色，表情”之意时可数。

2. **to** 考查介词。句意：联合国呼吁发达国家的人民援助落后国家的人民。appeal to 意为“呼吁”，to 为介词。

3. **truly** 考查副词。句意：我真的感到很抱歉。我希望你们不要太过失望或是感到不便。 此处是副词修饰形容词。

4. **started** 考查时态。句意：杰克发了几份电子邮件之后，他才开始研究他的项目。前半句的谓语动词用了过去完成时，后半句用一般过去时，这样才能表示“过去的过去”。

5. **to freeze** 考查动词不定式。句意：他们抱怨说，其他商人想方设法地要把他们排挤出这个生意圈。they could为定语从句，修饰先行词everything，此处为动词不定式作目的状语。此题容易受could 的影响而填入freeze。此句的完整形式为：They complained that other traders did everything（that）they could（do）to freeze them out of the business.

6. **hadn’t gone** 考查虚拟语气。句意：要是你昨晚没去看电影就好了。would rather后面接从句时要用虚拟语气，若从句中表示过去，则从句的谓语动词用过去完成时。

7. **when** 考查宾语从句。句意：我们一定要搞清楚卡尔什么时候来，以便我们给他订房间。

8. **since** 考查状语从句。句意：这孩子一年不见，长这么高了。since意为“自从”，此处为句型“It is/has been+一段时间+since从句”。当从句谓语动词为非延续性动词时，表示这段时间从该动作开始时算起，即“自从做……以来已经多久了”。

9. **which** 考查定语从句关系词。句意：我写此信的目的是向您解释一下我上次缺席您的课的原因。先行词为reason，此处for which 相当于why，在定语从句中作原因状语。

10. **that** 考查强调句型。句意：重要的不是谁是对的，而是什么才是对的。此题考查it is... that...这一强调句式，被强调的是not who is right but what is right。

II.

1. 第一句中**customer**改为**customers** 考查名词单复数。one of后面需要接名词的复数形式。

2. 第三句中**do**改为**did**考查时态。结合前后的时态可知，此处是陈述过去的事实，所以应该使用助动词did表示强调。

3. 第四句中**therefore**改为**however** 考查副词。后面一句I found a fault with it和前面一句everything was all right是相互矛盾的，所以应该是表示转折关系。

4. 第五句中**what**改为**that**考查连词。后面的句子为一个陈述句the “screen” doesn’t work at all，所以is后面缺少一个引导表语从句的引导词that。

5. 第六句**Probable**改为**Probably**考查副词。后面是两个完整的句子，用来修饰句子的是副词，而不能是形容词。

6. 第六句中**so**改为**neither/nor** 考查连词。neither/nor表示“也不”。

7. 第八句中**useful**改为**use**考查名词。此处是“be+of+抽象名词”结构，相当于对应的形容词。

8. 第八句中去掉**for**考查动词搭配。因为本句中没有宾语，所以不需要加介词for。

9. 第九句中**accept**改为**receive**考查动词辨析。本文属于投诉类的书信，所以应该是希望经理收到这封信时他能够给予重视，并加以解决，故为receive。

10. 第十句中**of**改为**from**考查动词搭配。hear from意为“收到某人的来信”，hear of意为“听说，听到”。

III.

A

语篇解读：本文介绍了中国的城市——广州的相关情况。

1. **biggest** 考查形容词最高级。根据空前the third可知。

2. **making** 考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词短语作结果状语。

3. **lies** 考查时态。此处为一般现在时态，表示目前的情况。

4. **but** 考查连词。此处为not only... but（also）...的搭配。

5. **directions** 考查名词。根据all判断后面应用名词复数。

6. **Its** 考查代词。句中表达需要形容词性物主代词。

7. **As** 考查定语从句。此处是as引导的非限制性定语从句。

8. **included** 考查非谓语动词。include是及物动词，置于逻辑主语White Cloud Mountain, Yuexiu Park, Guangxiao Temple, and Liurong Temple之后构成被动关系，故为过去分词。

9. **to build**考查非谓语动词。此处为make efforts to do结构的被动语态。

10. **a** 考查冠词。此处为泛指，应填入冠词a。

B

语篇解读：本文为说明文，介绍了丹麦首都哥本哈根。

1. **sits** 考查时态。此句是倒装句。根据前文可知为一般现在时态。主语为Denmark’s best-known landmark: the Little Mermaid。

2. **fantasies** 考查名词复数。根据前文one of可知，此处应填入名词复数。

3. **cloudy** 考查构词法。根据空后名词判断此处需要形容词。

4. **that** 考查定语从句。先行词为不定代词all，故关系代词只能用that。

5. **terribly** 考查副词。此处为副词修饰动词。

6. **what** 考查宾语从句。_____ we see today是of的宾语，因此需要一个引导词引导宾语从句，而宾语从句中see缺乏宾语，故需使用what引导。

7. **to declare** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作定语。中心词有序数词修饰的时候应用动词不定式。

8. **least** 考查形容词最高级。可根据空前the 和后文中among European capitals判断。

9. **Wherever/Anywhere** 考查连词。根据前后文逻辑关系判断。

10. **were** 考查虚拟语气。as if 引导从句时，当说话人认为句子所述的是不真实的或极少有可能发生或存在的情况时，需使用虚拟语气，如果从句表示与现在事实相反，谓语动词用一般过去时。

强化集训 14

I.

1. **second; fifth** 考查序数词。句意：香港排在第三位，瑞士排在第二，新加坡和澳大利亚分列第五和第九。根据前后文判断此处应填入序数词。

2. **or/otherwise** 考查连词。句意：在课堂上要仔细听老师讲课，否则你听不懂他说的内容。此处为“祈使句+or/otherwise/and+一般将来时态”的句型。

3. **beneficial** 考查形容词构词。句意：向自己信任的人倾诉感情是很有益处的。此处是It is beneficial to do sth.的句型。

4. **has been phoning**考查现在完成进行时态。句意：玛西娅，打搅你一下，有名来自《中国日报》的记者一整天都在打电话来，你现在能接她的电话吗？根据句中的时间状语all day可知，句子应使用现在完成进行时，表示反复做某事。

5. **Having graduated** 考查现在分词短语作状语。句意：毕业于北京外国语大学的她现在是一名口译员。graduate 的逻辑主语为she，两者之间是主动关系，由于毕业已经完成，因此用现在分词的完成式。

6. **（should）make** 考查虚拟语气。句意：我们建议他向老师道歉。suggest表示“建议”时，接that宾语从句要使用虚拟语气，即从句谓语需用should+动词原形（should可以省略）。

7. **whoever** 考查名词性从句。句意：我的叔父宅心仁厚，他从不拒绝向其求助的人。whoever作seek的主语，其引导的从句作介词to 的宾

语。

8. **attacked**考查状语从句的省略。句意：人不犯我，我不犯人；人若犯我，我必犯人。此处为条件状语从句的省略形式。

9. **has** 考查时态。句意：有问题要问的人，请今天下午到我办公室来。定语从句中的动词在人称和数方面应该与它的先行词保持一致，此处先行词为anyone，故动词用第三人称单数形式。

10. **As; Only** 考查定语从句和部分倒装。句意：正如谚语所说，罗马不是一日建成的。只有坚持不懈地学习，我们才能逐步取得进步，直至成功。前者是as引导的定语从句，指代Rome was not built in a day；后者根据can we make progress部分倒装判断为“only+状语”的结构。

II.

1. 第一句中**delighting**改为**delighted** 考查分词作形容词。一般来说，现在分词作形容词修饰物，过去分词作形容词修饰人，句子的主语为I，故用过去分词作形容词。

2. 第二句中**but**改为**so** 考查连词。此处前后分句为因果关系，不是转折关系。

3. 第三句**that**改为**what** 考查宾语从句。此处是what引导的一个宾语从句，疑问代词what在从句中作动词happens的主语。

4. 第五句中**are**改为**is** 考查主谓一致，主语One of my problems是单数形式，故谓语动词用is。

5. 第五句中**nervously**改为**nervous** 考查形容词。这里feel用作系动词，后面跟形容词形式作表语。

6. 第六句**feel**后加**it** 考查固定句型。it在句中作动词feel的形式宾语，真正的宾语是后面的不定式短语。

7. 第七句去掉**with** 考查动词。speak表示“讲某种语言”时是及物动词，后面直接跟某种语言，故此处需把介词with去掉。

8. 第八句**But**改为**And** 考查连词。此处上下文是一种并列递进关系，而不是转折，故用and。

9. 第八句**advices**改为**advice** 考查名词。advice是不可数名词，没有复数形式。

10. 第九句**many**改为**more** 考查比较级。句中有比较连词than，所以这里要用比较级形式more。

III.

A

语篇解读：本文介绍了西安的历史和文化。

1. **that** 考查定语从句。此处先行词为place，定语从句中缺乏主语，又因为先行词被形容词最高级修饰，故用that引导。此处容易误填where或者which。

2. **enjoys** 考查时态和主谓一致。此处叙述一般性情况，需使用一般现在时态，句子主语为Xi'an，故谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

3. **a**考查冠词。此处为泛指，故用不定冠词。unified发音以辅音开头，故使用a。

4. **making** 考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词短语作后置定语。many emperors与make 之间是主动关系。相当于who made。此处容易误填made。

5. **completely** 考查副词。此处是副词修饰形容词preserved。

6. **how** 考查名词性从句。此处为宾语从句，而宾从中缺少方式状语，故用how。

7. **tasty** 考查形容词构词。根据foods判断此处为形容词作定语。

8. **cooked**考查非谓语动词。此处为过去分词短语作后置定语。food与cook之间是被动关系，相当于which is cooked。

9. **to hide** 考查非谓语动词。此处是make no effort to do sth.的搭配。

10. **impression** 考查名词构词。根据空前the判断此处应填入名词。

B

语篇解读：本文介绍了欧洲文艺复兴的相关情况。

1. **expresses** 考查时态及主谓一致。此处应为一般现在时态，其主语为which，其先行词one work为单数。

2. **to be** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式作主语补足语。

3. **Painted** 考查非谓语动词。paint与逻辑主语the Mona Lisa之间是

被动关系，故为过去分词。by Leonardo da Vinci in the years 1503-1506进一步确认了答案。

4. **and** 考查连词。前后为并列关系。

5. **of/about** 考查介词。hear of与hear about的意义相近，这两个词组在英语中有时可以通用。它们含有“听人说起；从书报上看到关于”等意义。

6. **which/that** 考查定语从句。修饰先行词a French word。

7. **the** 考查冠词。序数词前面一般接定冠词。

8. **was used** 考查时态和语态。根据前文可知此处为一般过去时态。The word与use之间是被动关系。

9. **beginning** 考查名词。根据空前the和空后of判断此处应填入名词。

10. **rapidly** 考查副词。此处为副词修饰动词。

强化集训 15

I.

1. **eleventh; first** 考查序数词。句意：11世纪时在中国首次出现了纸币。根据空前定冠词the 判断，此处应填入序数词。

2. **but**考查连词。句意：开始时他有些腼腆，但现在他表现得更自然了。根据语境判断为转折关系。

3. **easily** 考查副词。句意：我想这本书现在已经停印了，但从图书馆很容易借到。此处是副词作状语，修饰动词。

4. **have been painting** 考查时态。现在完成进行时可表示从过去一直持续到现在的动作。在此题中，由于“一直在刷油漆”，所以才导致“看上去非常疲惫”，故用现在完成进行时态。

5. **belonging**考查非谓语动词作后置定语。句意：他说：“中国是一个发展中的属于第三世界的社会主义国家。”belong to的逻辑主语为country，两者之间为主动关系。此处相当于定语从句，即which belongs to the third world。

6. **be raining** 考查情态动词后面的时态。句意：鸟儿也安静下来

了。滴水逐渐变得频繁起来，所以森林上空一定在下雨。此处must be doing表推测，意为“目前一定在做某事”。

7. **what** 考查名词性从句。句意：我们的家乡变化很大，它现在与数年前的样子大不相同。what作used to be的表语。what引导的宾语从句作介词from的宾语。

8. **won’t give**考查时态。句意：店里的人不肯给他换硬币打电话，除非他买点什么。此句为unless引导的条件状语从句，遵循“主将从现”原则。

9. **which** 考查定语从句。句意：怀特先生写了不少文章，其中一些被译成了中文。在定语从句中of whom或of which同数词或代词（如some, many, little等）连用表示部分与整体关系。

10. **is raining**考查时态。句意：请不要出去。外面雨下得很大。根据祈使句Don’t go out, please.判断为目前正在发生的动作，故为现在进行时态。

II.

1. 第一句中**has**后面加**been** 考查语态。“公园”应被“建立”，故应使用被动语态。

2. 第二句中**A**改为**The**考查冠词。此处为再次提到上文中提到的公园，应表特指。

3. 第二句中**covered**改为**covering**或者**covered**前加**which**考查句子结构。此处是现在分词短语做伴随状语，也可看作非限制性定语从句。

4. 第三句中去掉**into**考查动词。enter为及物动词，介词into多余。

5. 第四句中**We**改为**They** 考查代词。前后人称应保持一致。

6. 第四句**what**改为**which** 考查定语从句。此处为非限制性定语从句，which指代前面整个情况。

7. 第五句中**which**后面的**is**改为**are**考查主谓一致。此句是完全倒装句，主语是all kinds of trees and flowers。

8. 第六句中**monkey**改为**monkeys** 考查名词复数。

9. 第七句中**lie**改为**lies** 考查主谓一致。动词lie应为第三人称单数形式。

10. 最后一句**happily** 改为**happy** 考查形容词。此处需要形容词修饰名词。

III.

A

语篇解读：本文为说明文，介绍了中国西南地区的哭婚习俗。

1. **Surprising** 考查非谓语动词。此处surprising意为“令人惊讶的”。

2. **remained** 考查时态。根据前文可知用一般过去时态。

3. **until/till** 考查介词。

4. **necessity** 考查构词法。根据空前冠词a可知，应填入名词。

5. **the** 考查冠词。此处为the same 的搭配。

6. **Otherwise** 考查副词。上下文构成转折逻辑关系。

7. **her** 考查代词。指代前面的bride（新娘）。

8. **in** 考查介词。此处in which相当于where。

9. **happiness** 考查构词法。根据空前冠词the 判断，应填入名词。

10. **arranged** 考查非谓语动词。此处是过去分词作前置定语。

B

语篇解读：本文属于说明文，介绍了英国国旗的由来。

1. **to** 考查介词。此处为定语从句，修饰先行词the country。这里是belong to的搭配。

2. **has** 考查时态。此处为一般情况的介绍，应为一般现在时态。

3. **because** 考查连词。此处为状语从句，根据句意判断可知前后为因果关系。

4. **joining** 考查非谓语动词。用在介词of后面需要动名词形式。

5. **to make** 考查非谓语动词。此处为动词不定式表示目的。

6. **using** 考查非谓语动词。此处为现在分词作伴随状语。

7. **centuries** 考查名词的复数形式。根据空前many判断，此处应填入名词复数。

8. **mixture** 考查名词构词。根据空前冠词a 判断此处需要名词形式。

9. **was added** 考查时态和语态。根据前文in 1800可知用一般过去时态，another cross与add之间是被动关系。

10. **an** 考查冠词。此处为泛指，且x的读音以元音开始。